

Owner's Manual

2018 A7

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

4G8012721BD

Table of contents

About this Owner's Manual 5

Cockpit 6
Cockpit overview 6
Controls at a glance 6

Instruments and indicator lights 9
Instruments 9
Indicator lights 10

Driver information system 20
Overview 20
Operation 21
On-board computer 21
Efficiency program 22
Odometer 23
Time/date display 23
Boost, shifting and engine oil temperature indicators 23
Head-up display 24

Starting and driving 26
Opening and closing 26
Central locking 26
Luggage compartment lid 32
Child safety lock 35
Power windows 35
Sunroof 36
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 37

Lights and Vision 39
Exterior lighting 39
Interior lighting 42
Vision 43
Windshield wipers 45

Seats and storage 47
General information 47
Front seats 47
Head restraints 48
Memory function 49
Ashtray 51
Cigarette lighter 51
12 Volt sockets 52
Storage 52
Luggage compartment 54

Warm and cold 58
Climate control system 58
Steering wheel heating 63

Driving 64
General information 64
Steering 66
Starting and stopping the engine 68
Start/Stop system 70
Electromechanical parking brake 72
Starting to drive 74
Automatic transmission 74

Trailer towing 81
Driving with a trailer 81

Driver assistance 84
Assistance systems 84
Speed warning system 84
Cruise control system 84
Lap timer 85
Audi adaptive cruise control 87
Audi pre sense 95
Audi active lane assist 96
Audi side assist 99
Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal detection 102
Audi drive select (drive settings) 105

Parking systems 108
General information 108
Parking system plus 109
Rearview camera 110
Peripheral cameras 113
Adjusting the display and the warning tones 118
Error messages 118
Trailer hitch 118

Intelligent Technology 120
Electronic stabilization control (ESC) 120
Brakes 122
Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering 124
All wheel drive (quattro) 124
Rear spoiler 125

Energy management 126
Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules 127

Safety 129
Driving safety 129
Basics 129
Correct passenger seating positions 130
Driver's and front passenger's footwell . . 133
Pedal area 134
Storing cargo correctly 134
Reporting Safety Defects 136

Safety belts 138
General information 138
Why use safety belts? 139
Safety belts 141
Belt tensioners 144

Airbag system 146
Important information 146
Front airbags 150
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 158
Knee airbags 162
Side airbags 164
Side curtain airbags 167

Child safety 170
Important information 170
Child safety seats 176
Securing child safety seats 181
LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children) 184
Additional information 188

Maintenance and Care 189
Checking and Filling 189
Fuel 189
Refueling 190
Emissions control system 192
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 193
Engine compartment 193
Engine oil 196
Cooling system 199
Brake fluid 201
Battery 201
Windshield washer system 203
Service interval display 203

Wheels 205
Wheels and Tires 205
Tire pressure monitoring system 222
Tire pressure monitoring system 224

Care and cleaning 228
General information 228
Car washes 228
Cleaning and care information 229
Placing your vehicle out of service 232

Do It Yourself 233
Emergency assistance 233
General information 233
Equipment 233
Tire mobility kit 234
Replacing wheels 236
Spare tire 241

Fuses 243
Replacing fuses 243
Driver side cockpit fuse assignment 244
Front passenger side cockpit fuse assignment 245
Luggage compartment fuse assignment . 245

Emergency situations 247
General 247
Starting by pushing or towing 247
Starting with jumper cables 247
Use of jumper cables 248
Towing with a tow truck 249
Raising the vehicle 251

Accessories and Technical Data . 253
Technical data 253
Vehicle specifications 253
Notes about technical data 253
Dimensions 253

4G8012721BD

Capacities 254
Weights 254

Consumer Information 255
Warranty coverages 255
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 255
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 255
Maintenance 255
Accessories and technical changes 257
Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems 258

Index 259

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** in this manual are a guide. Some of the details in your vehicle may differ from the illustration.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

4G8012721BD

Cockpit overview

Controls at a glance

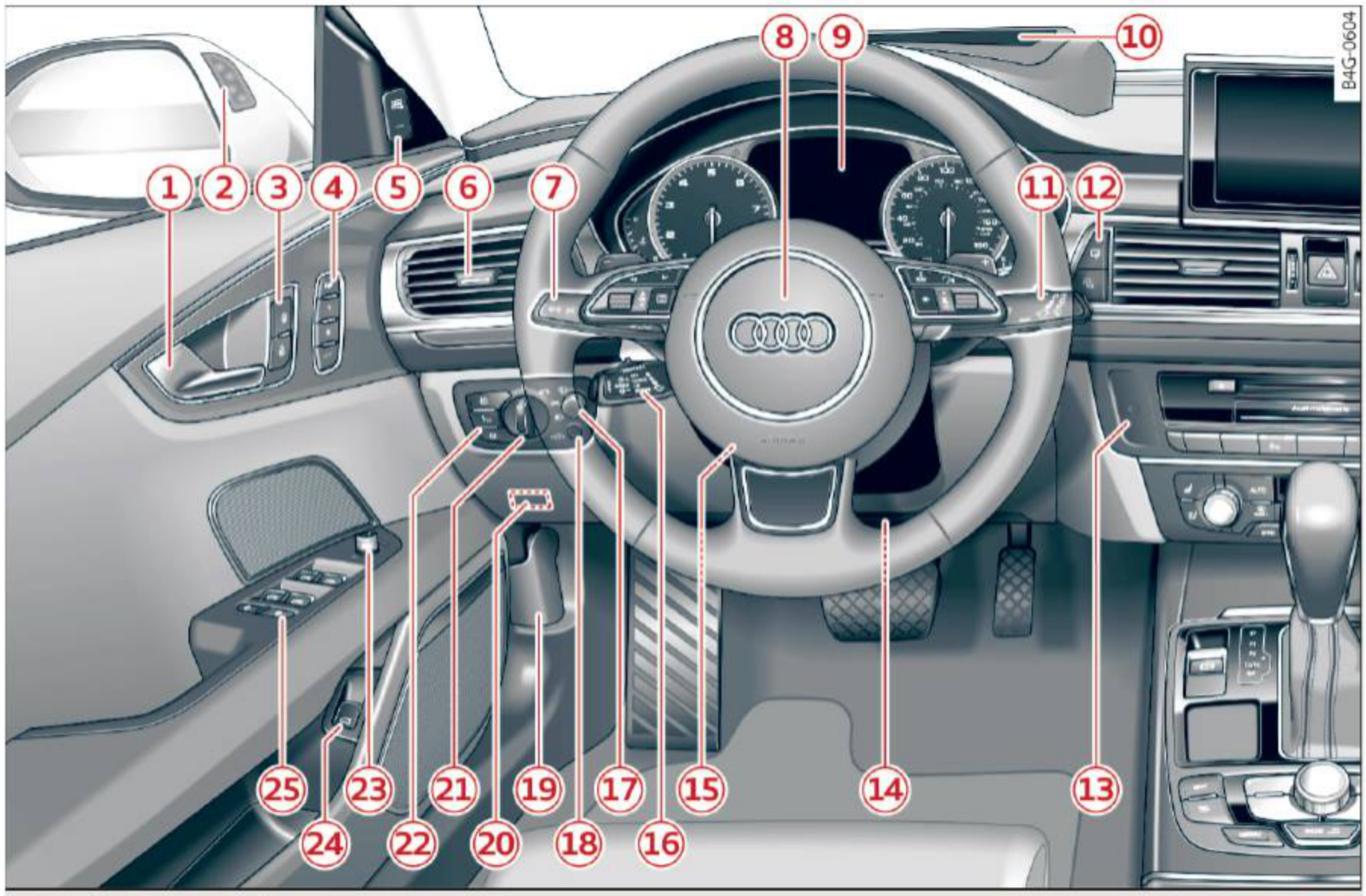


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

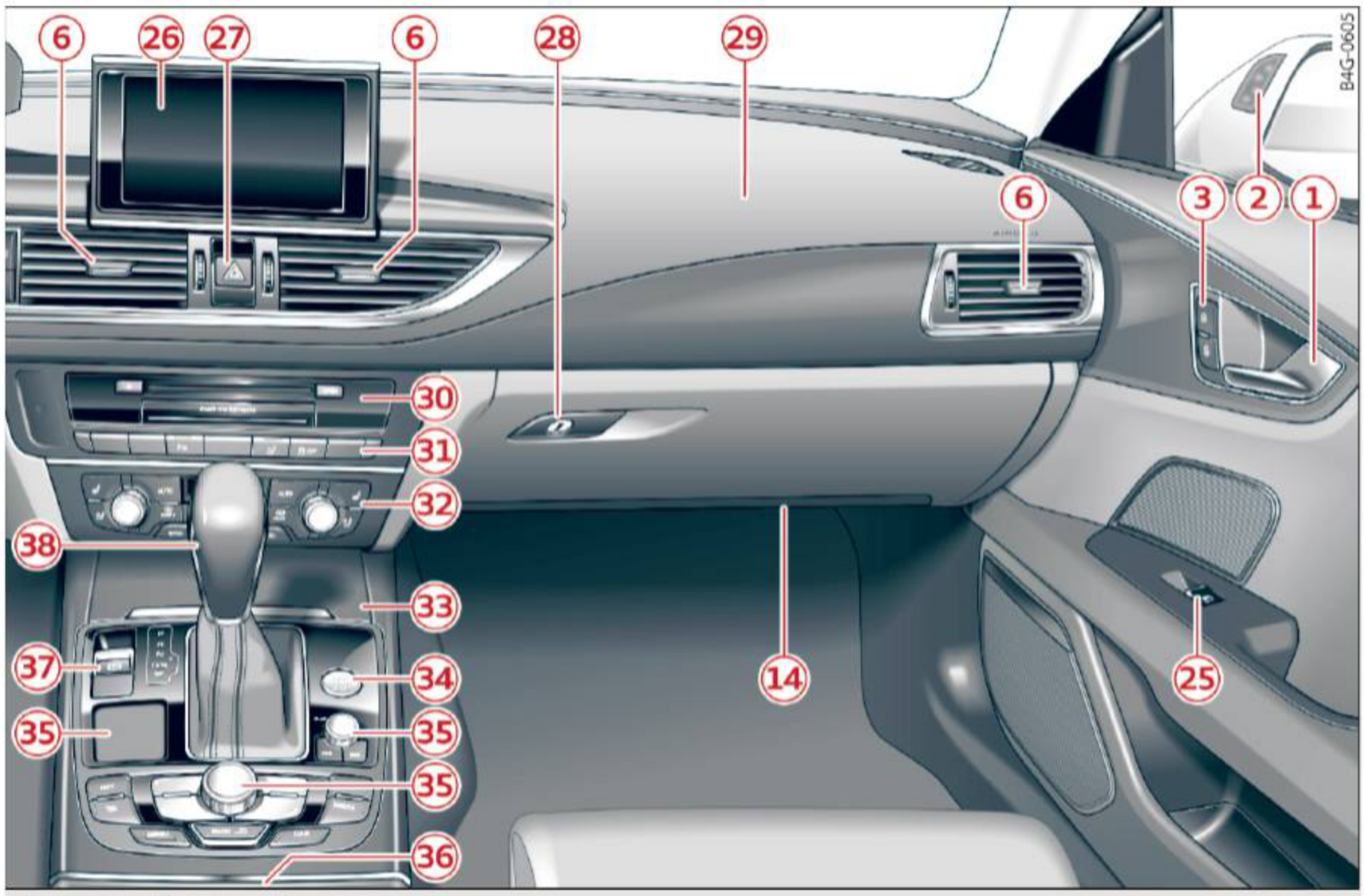


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

① Door handle
② Side assist display 99
③ Central locking switch 30
④ Memory function buttons 49
⑤ Side assist button 99
⑥ Air vents with thumbwheel
⑦ Lever for:
– Turn signals and high beams . . . 40
– High beam assistant 40
– Active lane assist 96
⑧ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 150
– Driver information system controls 20
– Audio/video, telephone, navigation and voice recognition controls
– drive select 105
– Steering wheel heating 63
– Shift paddles 78
⑨ Instrument cluster 9
⑩ Head-up display 24
⑪ Windshield washer system lever . 45
⑫ Buttons for:
– Infotainment system display
– Trip odometer 23
⑬ Starting the engine when there is a malfunction 70
⑭ Knee airbag 162
⑮ Steering wheel adjustment, depending on equipment
– Mechanical 66
– Power 67
⑯ Lever for:
– Cruise control system 84
– Adaptive cruise control 87
⑰ Button for switching the head-up display on/off, adjusting the height 24
⑱ Instrument illumination 42
⑲ Hood release 193
⑳ Data link connector for On Board Diagnostic System (OBD II) 193
㉑ Light switch 39
㉒ Buttons for:
– All-weather lights 39
– Night vision assist 102
– Rear fog light(s) 39
㉓ Power exterior mirror adjustment 43
㉔ Switch for luggage compartment lid 32
㉕ Buttons for:
– Power windows 35
– Parental control 35
㉖ Infotainment system display
㉗ Emergency flashers 41
㉘ Glove compartment 53
㉙ Front passenger's airbag 150
㉚ Drives (Infotainment system)
㉛ Buttons/indicator light for:
– Start/Stop system 70
– Parking aid 108
– PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 158
– Rear spoiler 125
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 121
㉜ Climate control system, depending on vehicle equipment:
– Deluxe automatic climate control . . 59
– 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control 60
㉝ Storage compartment or ashtray with cigarette lighter 51, 51
㉞ START ENGINE STOP button . . . 68
㉟ Infotainment unit
㊱ Cup holder , 12 Volt outlet 52, 52
㊲ Electromechanical parking brake . 72
㊳ Selector lever (automatic transmission) 75

Tips

– Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.
– The instrument cluster display is either multicolored or monochrome, depending on vehicle equipment. Because the images in both are nearly identical, the multicolored display is shown in this Owner's Manual. ▶

4G8012721BD

– Operation of the Multi Media Interface (Infotainment system) is described in a separate operating manual.

Instruments and indicator lights

Instruments

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.

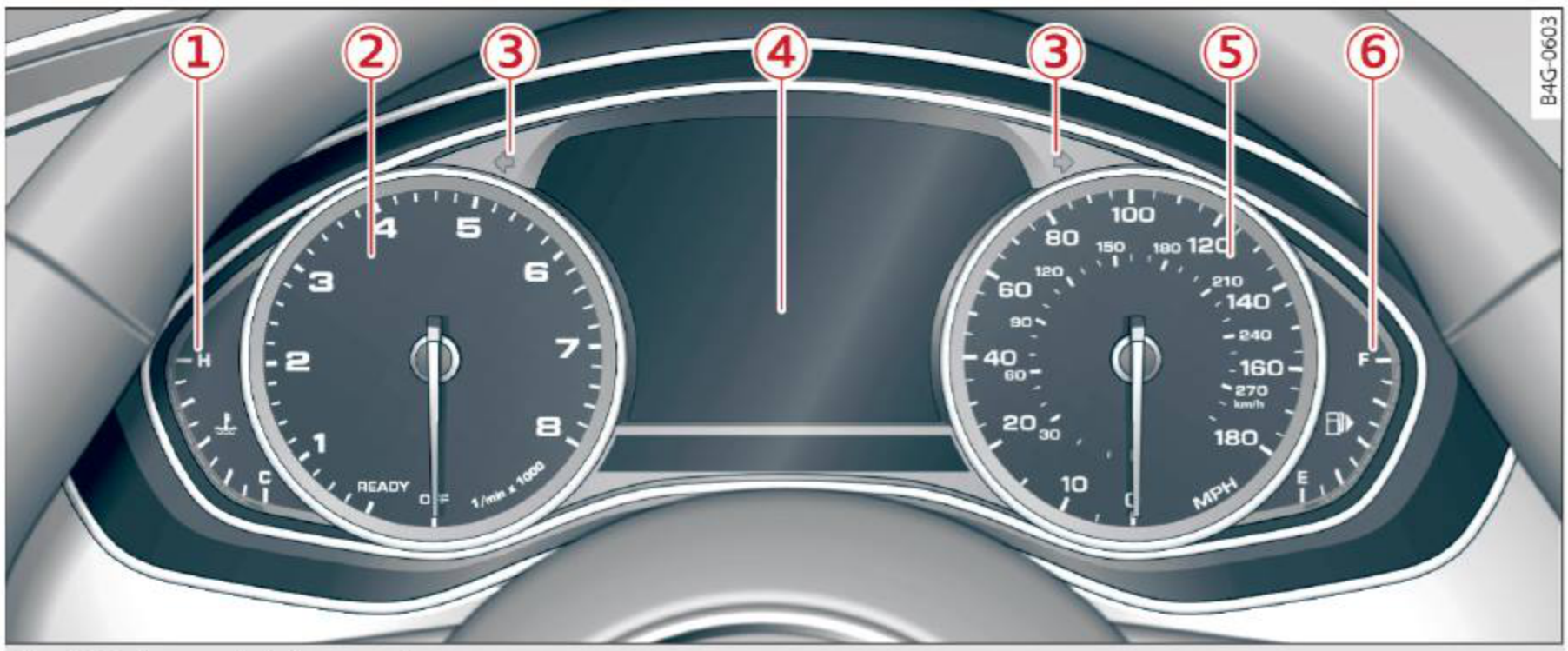


Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview

① Engine coolant temperature gauge . . 9
② Tachometer 10
– With **OFF** status indicator 68
– With **READY** status indicator . . 68, 70
③ Turn signals 40
④ Display with
– Driver information system 20
– Indicator lights 10
⑤ Speedometer
⑥ Fuel level 10

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature display ① ⇨ *page 9, fig. 3* only functions when the ignition is switched on. To prevent engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the instrument cluster display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 14*.

Note

– Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the cooling-air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load. ▶

– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

You should shift to the next lowest gear when the speed is below 1,500 RPM. The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in and when it is warmed up to operating temperature. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, choose the D or S selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Note

The needle in the tachometer ② ⇨ *page 9, fig. 3* may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short time or there is a risk of engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early helps you to save fuel and reduces operating noise.

Tips

Applies to: S and RS models

The engine speed is limited when the engine is cold - the full engine output is not available. When the engine is at operating temperature, the red area in the tachometer moves to a higher RPM range.

Fuel level

The display ⑥ only works when the ignition is switched on. If the fuel level drops below 2.6 gal (10 liters), a red LED will turn on and the indicator light will turn on ⇨ *page 17*. The LED blinks red when the fuel level is very low.

The possible range based on the current fuel level is shown in tab Ⓐ ⇨ *page 20, fig. 4*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 254*.

Note

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Indicator lights

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

Messages may appear with some indicator lights. A warning signal will sound at the same time. The indicator lights and messages in the instrument cluster display can be covered by other displays. To show them again, select the tab for indicator lights and messages using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 20*. If there are several malfunctions, you can display them one at a time using the thumbwheel.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

Central indicator light

Applies to: vehicles with monochrome display

If a message appears together with a central indicator light or , the central indicator light will indicate the priority of the warning. If a white indicator light also appears, the central indicator light will have its own color. For example, if appears together with , read the description for .

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. ▶

If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

Red indicator lights

BRAKE	**USA models:** brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 12*
(!)	**Canada models:** brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 12*
PARK	**USA models:** electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 13*
(P)	**Canada models:** electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 13*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 15*
MIN	Engine oil level (MIN)* ⇨ *page 15*
	Alternator ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine stop while driving ⇨ *page 14*
	Front safety belt ⇨ *page 14*
!	Electromechanical steering ✓ ⇨ *page 124*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 15*
MPH	**USA models:** speed warning system ⇨ *page 84*
Km/h	**Canada models:** speed warning system ⇨ *page 84*
	Adaptive cruise control* ✓ ⇨ *page 89*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 15*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 125*
	Night vision assist* ⇨ *page 103*
	Night vision assist* ⇨ *page 103*
!	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 10*

Yellow indicator lights

	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
ESC OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 120*
ABS	**USA models:** anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
(ABS)	**Canada models:** anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
AIR BAG	**USA models:** safety systems ⇨ *page 16*
	Canada models: safety systems ⇨ *page 16*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 16*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 13*
(!)	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 222*, or ⇨ *page 224*
TPMS	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 222*, or ⇨ *page 224*
EPC	Engine control (gasoline engine) ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 193*
!	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 17*

	Engine oil level (MIN)* ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine warm-up request ⇨ *page 17*
	Battery charge ⇨ *page 14*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 17*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 17*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 17*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 68*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 70*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 28*
	Bulb failure indicator ⇨ *page 18*
	Rear fog lights ⇨ *page 18*
	Headlight range control system ⇨ *page 18*
	Adaptive light* ⇨ *page 40*
	Light/rain sensor ⇨ *page 18*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 97*
	Suspension control* ⇨ *page 18*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 79*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 79*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 15*

	Brake booster ⇨ *page 16*, Central indicator light ⇨ *page 10*
	Electromechanical power steering, dynamic steering* ⇨ *page 124*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 125*
	Air suspension* ⇨ *page 15*
	Sport differential* ⇨ *page 18*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 18*
	**USA models:** cruise control system ⇨ *page 84*
	**Canada models:** cruise control system ⇨ *page 84*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 89*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 89*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 89*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 97*
	Start/Stop system* ⇨ *page 70*
	Start/Stop system* ⇨ *page 70*
	High beam assistant* ⇨ *page 40*
	High beams ⇨ *page 40*

BRAKE / (!) Brake system

If this indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the brake system. ▶

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Stop vehicle and check brake fluid level.

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Brakes: malfunction! Please stop vehicle safely

If the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models), the ESC indicator light , and the brake system indicator light BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) all turn on and this message appears, then the ABS, ESC and braking distribution are malfunctioning ⇨ ⚠.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Parking brake: System fault! See owner's manual.

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.
– If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Applies to: USA models

If the BRAKE and turn on at the same time, the brake pads are worn out ⇨ *page 16*.

WARNING

– Read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 193, Working in the engine compartment* before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid level.
– If the brake system indicator light does not turn off or it turns on while driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, and this increases the risk of an accident. Stop the vehicle and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may be malfunctioning. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

PARK/Ⓟ Electromechanical parking brake

If the PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light turns on, the parking brake was set.

PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Caution: Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Press brake pedal to release parking brake

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and press the Ⓟ button at the same time or start driving with hill start assist ⇨ *page 74*.

Parking brake!

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on the parking brake, see ⇨ *page 72*.

Cooling system

Turn off engine and check coolant level

The coolant level is too low.

Do not continue driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 200*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 200*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature too high! Please let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. Wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.
– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 193, Working in the engine compartment*.

Note

Do not continue driving if the indicator light turns on as this increases the risk of engine damage.

Front safety belt

The indicator light stays on until the driver's and front passenger's safety belts are fastened. Above a certain speed, there will also be a warning tone.

Tips

For additional information on safety belts, see ⇨ *page 138*.

Alternator/vehicle battery

Electrical system: malfunction! Battery is not being charged

There is a malfunction in the alternator or the vehicle electrical system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Because the vehicle battery is discharging, turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment such as the radio. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the battery charge level is too low.

Low battery: Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery charged enough while driving.

If the message does not turn off, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction.

Engine stop while driving

Engine stopped: No power steering and brake support.

There is a malfunction in the engine or in the fuel supply system.

More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to bring it to a stop off to the side from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is ▶

switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine and check oil level

Stop the engine and do not continue driving. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 197*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 198*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Engine oil level

Applies to: vehicles with oil level warning

Please add oil immediately.

Add engine oil immediately ⇨ *page 196*.

Add oil max. x qt (l). You may continue driving

Add the displayed amount of oil immediately ⇨ *page 196*.

Steering lock

Do not drive vehicle: Steering defective

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering lock: System fault Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle when there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock - this increases the risk of an accident.

Engine start system

Engine start system fault. Please contact dealer

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system fault. Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension

Air suspension: System fault. You can continue driving slowly (max. speed 35 mph)

There is a malfunction that can result in restricted driving stability.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately at a maximum speed of 35 mph (60 km/h) to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension: Service mode. Vehicle can only be moved with restrictions

Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the service mode deactivated.

Air suspension: System fault. ▶

There is a system malfunction that can result in restricted driving stability or reduced ground clearance.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension: Vehicle too low Ground clearance reduced

The ground clearance is very low due to a system malfunction. Wait until the air suspension system has restored normal ground clearance. Otherwise, conditions such as an uneven road surface can lead to vehicle damage.

Brake booster

Brake servo: limited functionality. You can continue driving. Contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the brake booster. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. Braking behavior may be different from how it normally functions and the brake pedal may vibrate.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was switched off using the OFF button ⇨ *page 120*.

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): Fault! See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the ABS system or electronic differential lock. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

If the BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS and ESC regulating function may have malfunctioned. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, see ⇨ *page 120*.

AIR BAG / Safety systems

The AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light monitors the safety systems.

If the AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light turns on or blinks, there is a malfunction in a safety system such as the airbag or belt tensioner system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Have the malfunction in the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during a collision, which increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Brake pads

Brake pads! ▶

The brake pads are worn.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the brake pads checked.

Applies to: USA models

The indicator light turns on together with the BRAKE indicator light.

EPC Engine control (gasoline engine)

If the EPC indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine control.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the engine checked.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed limitation

Maximum engine speed: XXXX rpm

The engine speed is automatically limited to the speed displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal once.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the EPC indicator light also turns on. Make sure that the speed does not go above the speed displayed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

Applies to: S and RS models

The engine speed is limited when the engine is cold - the full engine output is not available. When the engine is at operating temperature, the red area in the tachometer moves to a higher RPM range.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level! Sensor defective

The sensor to check the engine oil level has failed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine warm-up request

Please warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil, either from low outside temperatures or frequent short drives. Drive until the engine is warm so that the fuel in the engine oil will evaporate. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads when doing this.

Tank system

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 2.6 gallons (10 liters) of fuel left in the tank.

Fuel tank system malfunction! Contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on refueling, see ⇨ *page 190*.

Washer fluid level

Please refill washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off ⇨ *page 203*.

Windshield wipers

Windshield wiper defective

There is a malfunction with the windshield wipers. ▶

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Defective light bulb warning

If the indicator light turns on, a light has failed. The message indicates the location of the light. If the indicator light also turns on, then a rear fog light has failed. The position of the indicator light corresponds with the location on the vehicle.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Vehicle lights: Malfunction

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Dynamic headlight range control

Applies to: vehicles with dynamic headlight range control

Headlight range control: System fault

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Light/rain sensor

Automatic headlights/ automatic wipers: System fault

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all functions that are independent of the rain sensor through the windshield wiper lever.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Adaptive dampers

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

Suspension: System fault! You can continue driving

There is an adaptive damper malfunction.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential

Applies to: vehicles with sport differential

Sport differential: System fault

There is a malfunction with the sport differential.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential: Overheating

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

WARNING

Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the sport differential is faulty or malfunctioning. The repair must be performed by trained personnel using the correct oil in order to ensure safety.

Turn signals

If the or indicator light blinks, the turn signals are activated. If both indicator lights are blinking, the emergency flashers are activated.

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

Tips

Additional information about the turn signals can be found under ⇨ *page 40*.

Driver information system

Overview



Fig. 4 Driver information system in the instrument cluster



Fig. 5 Instrument cluster: example information line

The information in the driver information system is shown in Ⓑ tabs Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 4*. The following content is possible depending on vehicle equipment:

Ⓐ	Ⓑ
First tab	**Vehicle functions:**
	On-board computer ⇨ *page 21*
	Efficiency program* ⇨ *page 22*
	Digital speedometer
	Cruise control system* ⇨ *page 84*
	Adaptive cruise control* and braking guard* ⇨ *page 87*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 96*
	Boost, shifting and engine oil temperature indicators* ⇨ *page 23*
	Lap timer* ⇨ *page 85*
	Reduced display
Second tab	Indicator lights and messages
	Warning when a door, the hood or the rear lid is not closed
	Service interval display ⇨ *page 203*
	Speed warning system* ⇨ *page 84*
Third tab	Night vision assist* ⇨ *page 102*
Fourth tab	Audio/Video
Fifth tab	Telephone*
Sixth tab	Navigation*

The second and third tabs are only visible if at least one indicator light or message is shown or if that system is switched on.

The status line Ⓒ is located in the bottom part of the display ⇨ *fig. 4*. It displays the exterior temperature, time, selector lever position, trip odometer and odometer.

For some vehicle functions, you can access the trip information from the temporary memory ⇨ *page 22* in line ① ⇨ *fig. 5*. ▶

WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Tips

– You can select the units used for temperature, speed and other measurements in the Infotainment system.
– If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to the heat radiating from the engine.
– For information on the audio/video and navigation* functions, refer to the separate Infotainment system operating manual.

Operation

The driver information system is operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel.

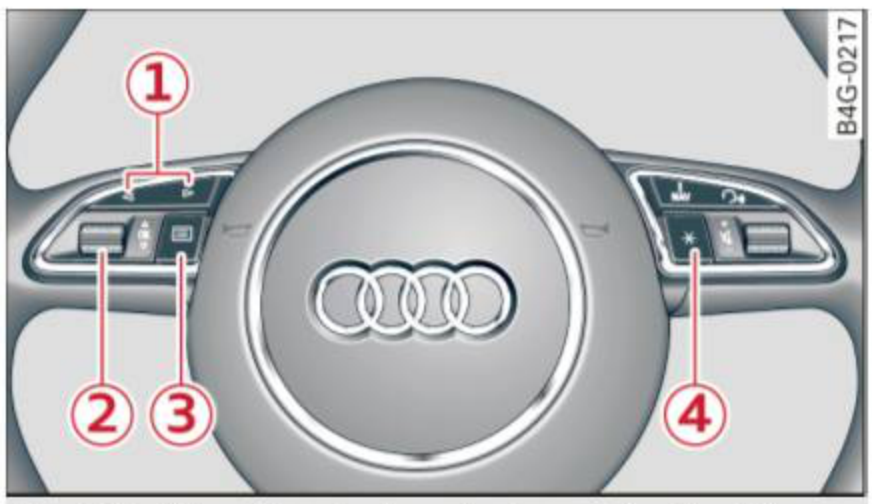


Fig. 6 Multifunction steering wheel: operating the driver information system



Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: opening the vehicle functions menu

Operating

- Switch the ignition on.
- To switch between the tabs, press the rocker switch (1) to the left or right ⇨ *fig. 6*.
- To access additional information below or above, turn the thumbwheel (2) down or up.
- To confirm a selection, press the thumbwheel (2).
- To open the submenu for an active tab, press the button ▤ (3).
- To select a function programmed to a steering wheel button*, press the button (4).

Opening the Vehicle functions

- Select the first tab with the rocker switch (1).
- Press the ▤ button (3). The **Vehicle functions** menu is displayed ⇨ *fig. 7*.
- To select a menu item, turn and press the thumbwheel (2).

Resetting values to zero

- In the **Vehicle functions** menu, select **On-board computer** or **Efficiency program**.
- You can now select between the long-term memory and short-term memory.
- To reset the values in a memory, press and hold the thumbwheel (2) for one second.

Assigning a function to a programmable steering wheel button*

- Select the CAR function button > **(Car)*Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button programming**.

The last function selected displays when you switch the ignition on.

On-board computer



Fig. 8 Instrument cluster: fuel consumption display ▶

You can call up the following information in the on-board computer:

– Date
– Driving time from the short-term memory
– Average consumption from the short-term memory
– Average speed from the short-term memory
– Distance driven from the short-term memory
– Current fuel consumption
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

For some vehicle functions, you can access the driving information from the short-term memory in the line (1) ⇨ *page 20, fig. 5*.

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown using a bar graph ⇨ *fig. 8*. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel through one of the following functions:

– **Recuperation**: electrical energy can be stored in the vehicle battery when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill. The bar will move toward .
– **Cylinder on demand system***: the engine automatically switches four cylinders off when lower power output is required and other conditions are met. This change is not noticeable to the passengers.

Tips

The date, time of day and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 23*.

Efficiency program

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program

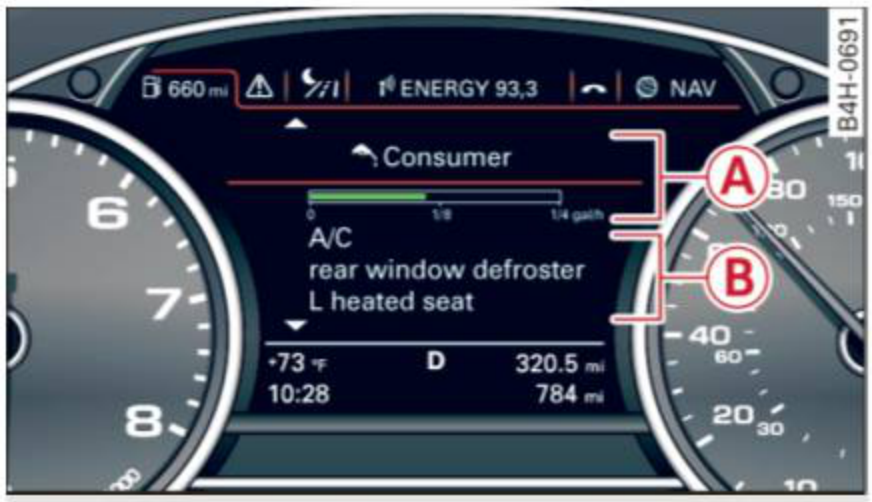


Fig. 9 Instrument cluster: energy consumers

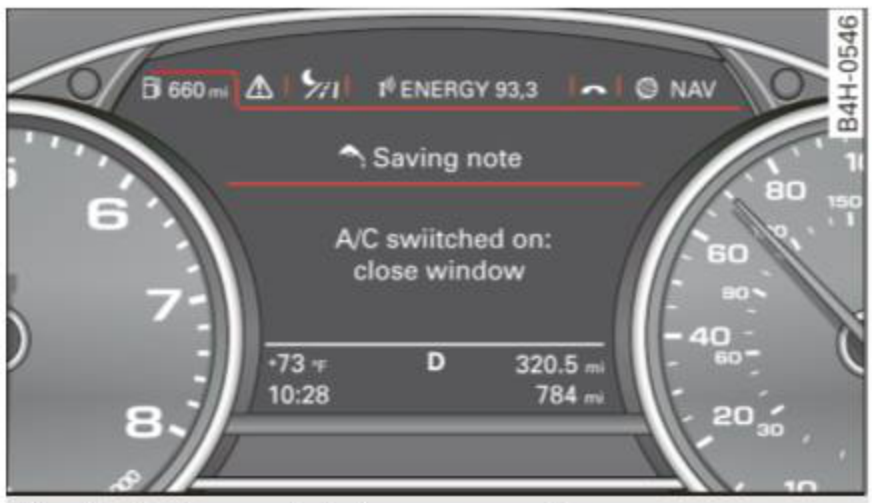


Fig. 10 Instrument cluster: economy tip

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel. It shows other consumers that are using fuel and economy tips give advice on how to drive efficiently. The efficiency program receives distance and consumption data from the on-board computer.

To display the efficiency program, open the **Vehicle functions** menu and select the **Efficiency program** menu item.

Other consumers

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three other equipment items (B) ⇨ *fig. 9*. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed.

A gauge (A) also shows the current total consumption of all other consumers. ▶

Economy tips

In certain situations, economy tips appear automatically for a short time in the efficiency program ⇨ *fig. 10*. If you follow these economy tips, you can reduce your vehicle's fuel consumption.

To turn an economy tip off immediately after it appears, press any button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Tips

- If you erase the data in the efficiency program, the values in the on-board computer will also be reset.
- Once you have turned an economy tip off, it will only appear again after you turn the ignition on again.
- The economy tips are not displayed in every instance, but rather in intervals over a period of time.

Odometer



Fig. 11 Instrument cluster: odometer and reset button

The display of distance driven is shown in miles "mi" or kilometers "km". The units of measurement (kilometers/miles) can be changed in the Infotainment system.

Trip odometer and odometer

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button.

The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Malfunction indicator

If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.

Time/date display

The date, time of day and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system. Refer to the Infotainment system operating manual for instructions.

When you open the driver's door, the date and time appear in the instrument cluster display for 30 seconds.

Boost, shifting and engine oil temperature indicators

Applies to: vehicles with boost, shifting and engine oil temperature indicators



Fig. 12 Instrument cluster: boost, shifting and engine oil temperature indicators

▸ Turn the menu thumbwheel on the steering wheel until **Lap timer** appears in the instrument cluster display.

Ⓐ Boost pressure indicator

The current engine load (meaning the current boost pressure) is indicated by a bar.

Ⓑ Shifting indicator

The shifting indicator is only visible when shifting gears in tiptronic mode ⇨ *page 78*. Green LEDs turn on as the engine RPMs increase. The LEDS flash red at speeds near the RPM limit. Shift to the next highest gear at the right time. ▶

In vehicles with an activated head-up display ⇨ *page 24*, the shifting indicator is shown in the head-up display instead of the instrument cluster.

Ⓒ Engine oil temperature indicator

When engine oil temperatures are low, the display --- °F (--- °C) appears in the instrument cluster.

The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 140 °F (60 °C) and 248 °F (120 °C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature may be higher if there is heavy engine load and high temperatures outside. This is not a cause for concern as long as the  ⇨ *page 15* or  ⇨ *page 15* indicator lights in the display do not blink.

Head-up display

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

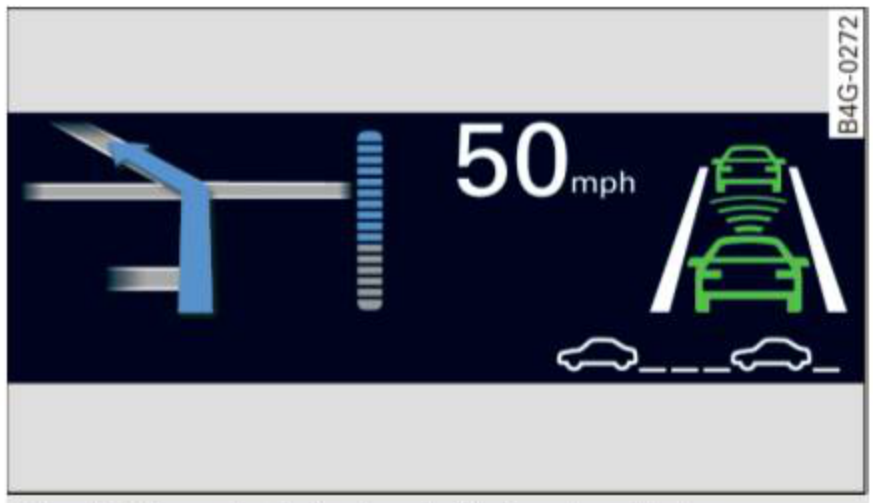


Fig. 13 Example: indicators in the head-up display



Fig. 14 Instrument panel: knob for the head-up display

The head-up display projects certain warnings or selected information from the assist systems* or navigation* on the windshield. The display appears within the driver's field of vision.

Switching on/off

▸ To switch the head-up display on or off, press the knob ⇨ *fig. 14*.

Adjusting the height

The height of the display can be adjusted to the individual driver.

▸ Make sure you are seated correctly ⇨ *page 130*.
▸ Turn the knob to adjust the display.

Settings in the Infotainment system

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Head-up display** > **Head-up display contents** or **Display brightness**.

Display content

In the Infotainment system, you can specify which information should be displayed: For example, this can include navigation information*, Adaptive cruise control* or night vision assist*.

The display of certain information and some of the red indicator lights cannot be hidden in the Infotainment system.

Display brightness

You can adjust the display brightness in the Infotainment system. The display brightness decreases automatically as the amount of light decreases. The background brightness is adjusted with the instrument illumination ⇨ *page 42*.

Note

To prevent scratches on the glass covering the head-up display, do not place any objects in the projection opening.

Tips

– Sunglasses with polarization filters and unfavorable lighting conditions can have a negative effect on the display.
– An optimum display depends on the seat position and the height adjustment of the head-up display.
– A special windshield is needed for the head-up display function. ▶

– For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *table on page 230*.

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following options:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 29*,
– Sensors in the door handles* ⇨ *page 29*,
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 31*, or
– Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 30*.

Turn signals

The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If the blinking continues, one of the doors or the luggage compartment lid/hood is not closed or the ignition is still switched on.

Auto Lock

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

The vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the central locking system switch is used or one of the door handles is pulled.

The Auto Lock function can be switched on and off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 31*.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective door unlocking

The doors and luggage compartment lid will lock when they close. You can set in the Infotainment system whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked when unlocking ⇨ *page 31*.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

Only lock your vehicle when all of the doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed and the remote control key is not in the vehicle. This helps to prevent you from locking yourself out accidentally.

The following conditions prevent you from locking your remote control key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or by touching the locking sensor* on a door.
– If the most recently used convenience key* is detected in the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid automatically unlocks again after closing it.
– If the convenience key* that was last used is detected inside the vehicle, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside.

Closing aid on the doors*

The vehicle doors are equipped with closing aids. When closing a door, you only have to let it fall lightly into the latch. It then closes automatically ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– When you lock your vehicle from outside, nobody - especially children - should remain inside the vehicle. Remember, when you lock the vehicle from the outside the windows cannot be opened from the inside.
– When you leave the vehicle, always take the ignition key with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the doors.
– Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.
– Applies to vehicles with power side door closer*:
  – When closing a door, make sure nothing can interfere with the door. This could cause serious personal injury.
  – You can stop the door from closing at any time by pulling on the inside or outside door handle. ▶

Tips

– Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Key set



Fig. 15 Your vehicle key set

Ⓐ Remote control key or convenience key*

The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 29* and ⇨ *page 68*.
You can unlock/lock your vehicle with the remote control key. A mechanical key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 28*.

Ⓑ Separate mechanical key

This key is not intended for constant use. It should only be used in an emergency. Do not carry it on your key ring and do not store it in the vehicle.

Replacing a key

If a key is lost, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have *this* key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the Infotainment system. Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & control** > **Programmed keys**. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle may not be able to start if there is a key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the master key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored in your remote control key. Your Audi service advisor can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with a convenience key*.

Personal convenience settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses “their own” master key. When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

– Climate control system
– Central locking system
– Windows
– Interior lighting*
– Memory function*
– Parking aid*
– Adaptive cruise control*
– Active lane assist*
– Side assist*
– Drive select
– Night vision assist*
– Steering wheel heating*

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, open the doors or turn on the ignition.

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children ▶

remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.

Note

Protect the remote control key against high temperatures and direct sunlight.

Tips

- The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a cell phone or radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked!
- Using the mechanical key, you can:
  - Lock/unlock the glove compartment.
  - Manually lock/unlock the vehicle ⇨ *page 31*.
  - Mechanically lock the doors ⇨ *page 31*.
- For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 258*.

Removing the integrated mechanical key

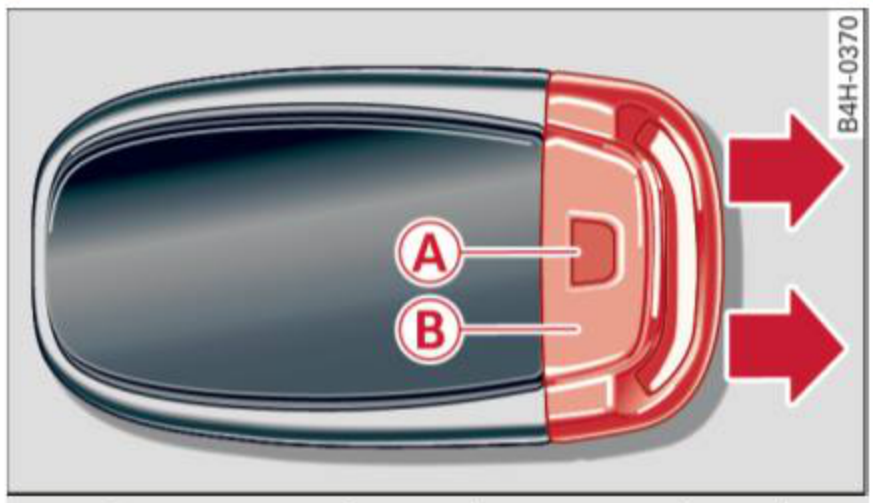


Fig. 16 Remote control master key: removing the mechanical key

- Press the release button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 16*.
- Pull the mechanical key Ⓑ out of the remote control key.

LED and batteries in the remote control key

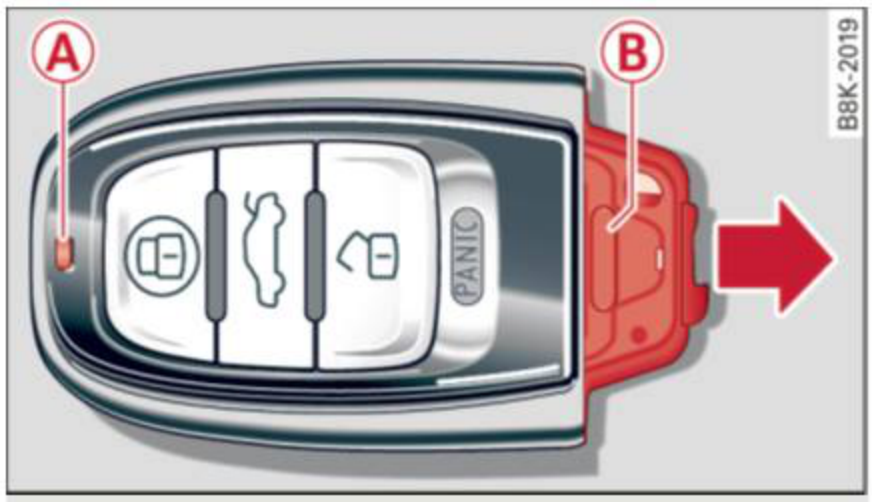


Fig. 17 Remote control key: removing the battery holder

LED on the remote control key

The LED Ⓐ informs you about the function of the remote control key.

- If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- If you press and hold a button longer (convenience opening), the LED blinks several times.
- If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is dead. The indicator light and the message **Please change key battery** appear. Replace the battery in the remote control key.

Replacing the remote control key battery

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 28*.
- Press the release button Ⓑ on the battery holder and pull the battery holder out of the remote control key in the direction of the arrow at the same time.
- Insert the new battery with the “+” facing down.
- Slide the battery holder carefully into the remote control key.
- Insert the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash. ▶

Tips

The replacement battery must meet the same specifications as the original battery in the remote control key.

Unlocking/locking by remote control

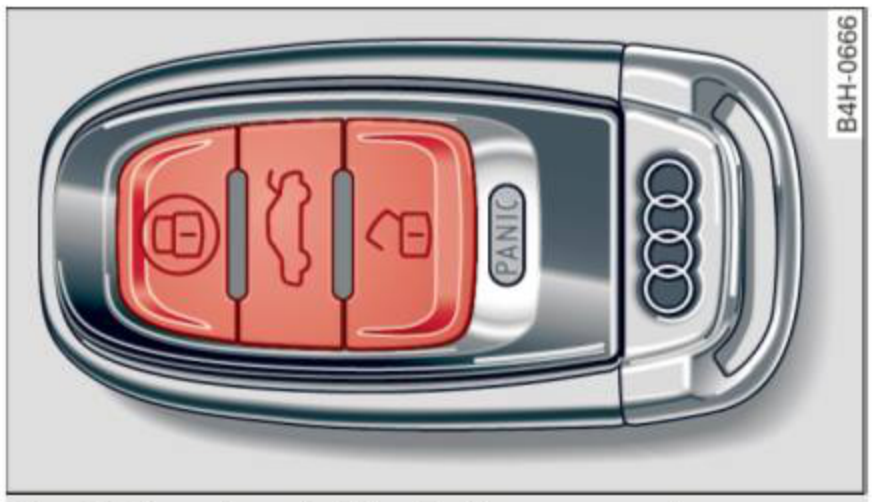


Fig. 18 Remote control key: button programming

- ▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *fig. 18*.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button **one time** ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the button briefly.
- ▸ To trigger the alarm, press the PANIC button. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers are activated.
- ▸ To turn the alarm off, press the red PANIC button again.

If you unlock the vehicle and then do not open any of the doors, the luggage compartment lid, or hood are opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 31*.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 26*.

Tips

- – Only use the remote control key when you are within view of the vehicle.
- – The vehicle can only be locked when the selector lever is in the P position.
- – Do not use the remote control when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could unintentionally lock the vehicle. If you then tried to start the engine or open a door, the alarm would be triggered. If this happens, press the unlock button.
- – Only use the panic function in an emergency.

Locking and unlocking with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and luggage compartment lid can be unlocked/locked without using the remote control key.

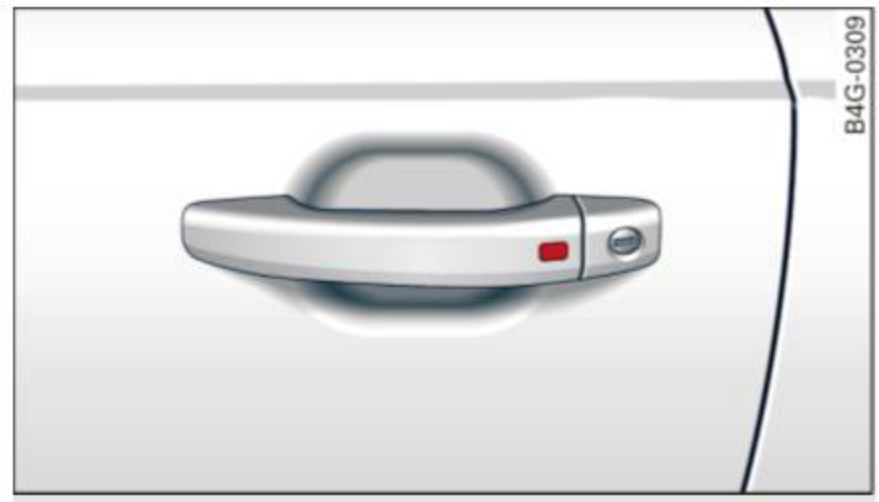


Fig. 19 Door handle: locking the vehicle

Unlocking the vehicle

- ▸ Grip the door handle. The door unlocks automatically.
- ▸ Pull on the door handle to open the door.

Locking the vehicle

- ▸ Place the selector lever in the "P" position; otherwise, the vehicle cannot be locked.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 19*, ⇨ ⚠. Do not hold the door handle while doing this. ▶

You can unlock/lock the vehicle at every door. The remote control key cannot be more than approximately 4 ft (1.5 m) away from the door handle. It makes no difference whether the master key is in your jacket pocket or in your briefcase, for example.

The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 31*.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 26*.

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for a long period of time, note the following:

– The proximity sensor switches off after a few days to save energy. You then have to pull once on the door handle to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open it.
– The energy management system gradually turns off unnecessary convenience functions to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible. You may not be able to unlock your vehicle using the convenience key.

Central locking switch

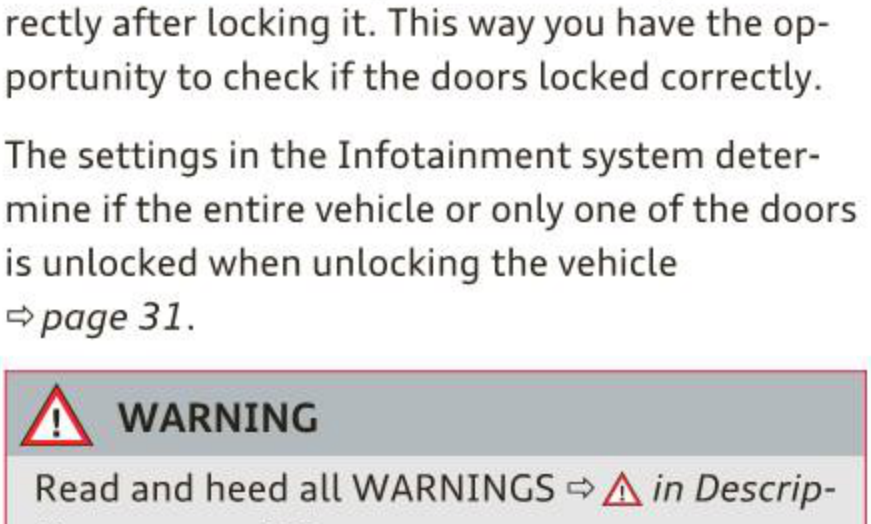


Fig. 20 Driver's door: central locking switch



Fig. 21 Rear door: central locking switch

▸ To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button.

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– Opening the door and the luggage compartment lid from the *outside* is not possible (for security reasons, such as when stopped at a light).
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– Applies to: front doors: you can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
– Rear doors: to unlock the doors, pull on the door handle *one time*. To open the doors, pull on the door handle *again*.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

WARNING

– The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when the 🔒 button is pressed.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto ▸

Lock) ⇨ *page 26*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the button in the central locking switch.

Setting the central locking system

You can set which functions are controlled by the central locking system.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **(Central locking)***.

Door unlocking - you can decide if **All** doors or only the **Driver** door should unlock. The luggage compartment lid also unlocks when **All** is selected. If you select **Driver** in a vehicle with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock.

If you select **Driver**, all the doors and luggage compartment lid will unlock if you press the button on the remote control key twice.

Disable tailgate handle - if you select **On**, the luggage compartment lid handle is locked. In this case, the luggage compartment lid can be opened with the button on the remote control key or with the button* in the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key*, you can still open the luggage compartment lid using the handle if an authorized remote control key is near the proximity sensor*.

Fold mirrors when locking* - if you select **On**, the exterior rearview mirrors fold in automatically when you press the button on the remote control key or touch the sensor* in the handle.

Lock when driving[1)] - if you select **On**, the vehicle locks automatically when driving. All of the doors and the luggage compartment lid lock.

Tone when locking [1)] - if you select **On**, a tone will sound when you lock the vehicle.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the doors

If the central locking fails, you must unlock/lock the doors separately.

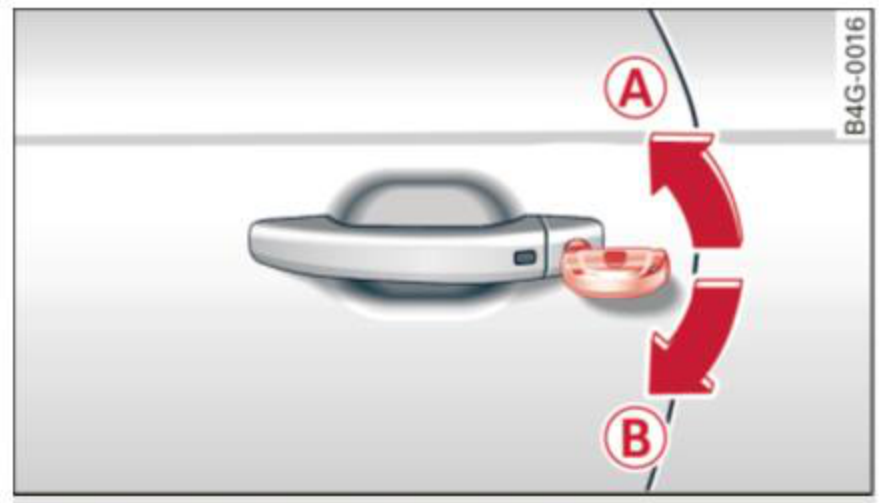


Fig. 22 Driver's door: door lock cylinder



Fig. 23 Door: emergency locking

Unlocking/locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

▸ Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 28* or use the separate mechanical key.
▸ To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 22*.
▸ To lock the driver's door, move the selector lever to the "P" position (automatic transmission) and turn the key **one time** to the lock position Ⓑ ⇨ ⚠.

Locking the front passenger's door/rear doors with the mechanical key

The emergency lock is located on the rear side of the front passenger's door and the rear doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

▸ Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 28* or use the separate mechanical key.
▸ Remove the cap from the opening ⇨ *fig. 23*. ▶

1) This function is not available in all countries.

▸ Insert the key in the inside slot and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or left (left door).

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 26*.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is switched on or off when locking/unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

▸ To switch the alarm off, press the button on the remote control key or switch the ignition on.

Break-in security feature

The alarm will sound if there is a break-in at the doors, hood and/or luggage compartment lid.

Luggage compartment lid

Automatic luggage compartment lid

Applies to: vehicles with automatic luggage compartment lid

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed electrically.



Fig. 24 Driver's door: opening/closing the luggage compartment lid

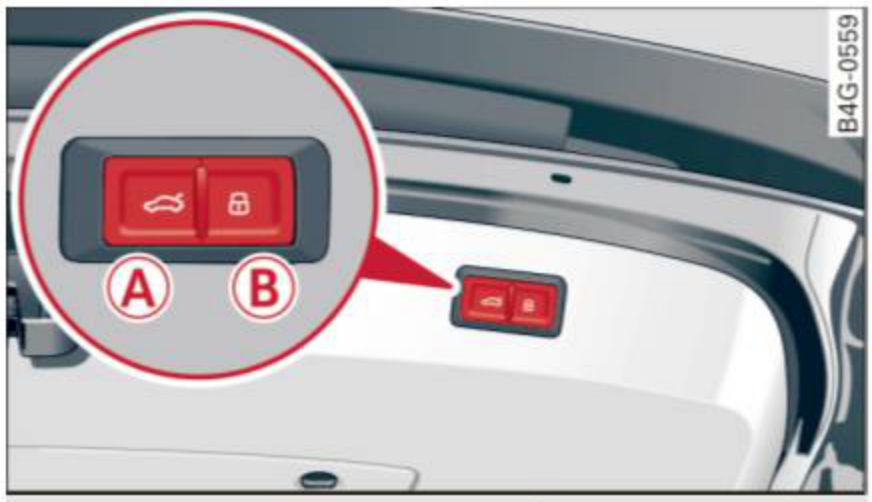


Fig. 25 Luggage compartment lid: Ⓐ closing button, Ⓑ lock button (vehicles with convenience key*)

Opening the luggage compartment lid

▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key for at least one second. Or
▸ Pull the button in the driver's door briefly ⇨ *fig. 24*. Or
▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

▸ Pull the button in the driver's door until the luggage compartment lid is closed ⇨ ⚠. Or
▸ Press the button in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 25*. The luggage compartment lid will automatically lower and close ⇨ ⚠. Or
▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key until the luggage compartment lid is closed (vehicles with convenience key*) ⇨ ⚠. Make sure there is enough distance between you and the luggage compartment lid. There should be a maximum 9 feet (3 m) of distance. Or
▸ Press the button ⇨ *fig. 25* in the luggage compartment lid (vehicles with convenience key*). The remote control key must not be more than approximately 4 ft (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment and it must not be inside the vehicle. The luggage compartment lid will automatically lower and close. The vehicle locks ⇨ ⚠. Or
▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The luggage compartment lid will automatically lower and close ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Setting the luggage compartment lid open position

- ▸ Bring the luggage compartment lid into the desired open position ⇨ (!). The position must be at a certain height or higher to store.
- ▸ Press and hold the button for at least four seconds to store the new open position. A visual and audio signal will follow.
- ▸ To set a higher open position, wait at least five seconds and then carefully press the luggage compartment lid upward.
- ▸ Press and hold the button again for at least four seconds to store the new open position.

The opening/closing process will stop immediately if:

– You pull/release the button in the driver's door, or
– You press/release the button on the remote control key (vehicles with convenience key*), or
– You press the or button (vehicles with convenience key*) in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You push the handle in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You press against the luggage compartment lid against the direction it is moving, or
– When something blocks the luggage compartment lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

If you press the handle or one of the or buttons (vehicles with convenience key*) now, the luggage compartment lid will either open or close, depending on what angle it is at.

WARNING

– Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 26*.
– After closing the luggage compartment lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.
– To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the luggage compartment lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the luggage compartment lid cannot be fully closed.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the luggage compartment lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.
– Never close the luggage compartment lid inattentively or without checking first. Although the closing force of the luggage compartment lid is limited, you can still seriously injure yourself or others.
– Always ensure that no one is within range of the luggage compartment lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges and the upper and lower edges - fingers or hands can be pinched.
– Never try to interfere with the luggage compartment lid or help it when it is being opened or closed automatically.

Note

The luggage compartment lid can bump into objects such as the garage ceiling when opening and become damaged.

Tips

– The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the luggage compartment lid can be opened using the handle ⇨ *page 31*.
– There are audio signals when closing the luggage compartment lid with the remote control key (vehicles with convenience key*) or with the button in the driver's door.
– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
– You can close the luggage compartment lid using the remote control key (vehicles with ▸

convenience key*) up to a distance of approximately 9 feet (3 m).
– The luggage compartment lid can be operated manually if the vehicle battery is low. It is necessary to use more force when doing this. Move the lid slowly to reduce the amount of force needed.

Luggage compartment with movement-activated opening

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key and sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid



Fig. 26 Rear of the vehicle: foot movement

Requirements: you must be carrying your vehicle key with you. You must be standing at the center behind the luggage compartment lid. You should be approximately 8 in (20 cm) from the rear of the vehicle. The ignition must be switched off. Make sure you have firm footing.

▸ Move your foot back and forth below the bumper ⇨ *fig. 26*. Do not touch the bumper. Once the system recognizes the movement, the luggage compartment lid will open.

The luggage compartment lid will only open if you make the movement as described. This prevents the luggage compartment lid from opening due to similar movements, such as when you walk between the rear of the vehicle and your garage door.

General information

In some situations, the function may be limited or temporarily unavailable. This may happen if:

– the luggage compartment lid was closed immediately before.
– you park close to a hedge and the branches move back and forth under the vehicle for a long period of time
– you clean your vehicle, for example with a pressure washer or in a car wash
– there is heavy rain
– the bumper is very dirty, for example after driving on salt-covered roads
– there is interference to the radio signal from the vehicle key, such as from cell phones or remote controls

Luggage compartment lid emergency release

The luggage compartment lid can be released from inside the luggage compartment in an emergency.

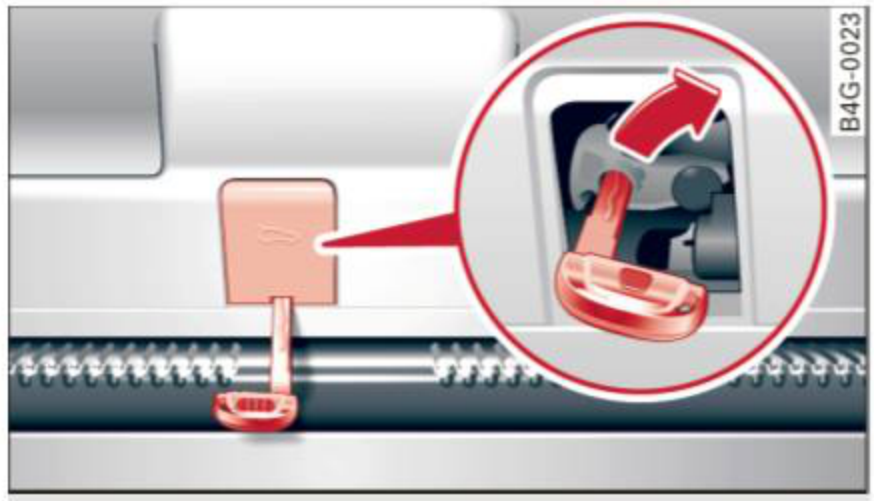


Fig. 27 Inner luggage compartment lid: access to the emergency release

▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 28*.
▸ Pry the cover off using the mechanical key ⇨ *fig. 27*.
▸ Press the lever in the direction of the arrow to release the luggage compartment lid.

Child safety lock

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside and the rear power windows from be operated.



Fig. 28 Section of driver's door: child safety lock buttons

- ▸ To activate/deactivate the inner door handle and the power window switch for the respective rear door, press the left/right button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 28*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.
- ▸ To activate/deactivate the child safety lock on both sides, you must press the buttons one after the other.

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.

Power windows

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

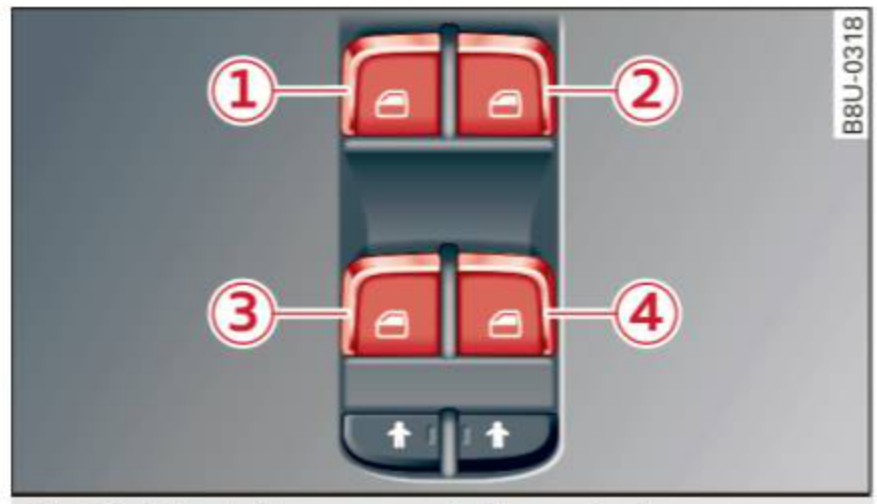


Fig. 29 Driver's door: power window controls

All power window switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

Opening and closing the windows

- ▸ To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed/pulled again.
- ▸ To select a position in between opened and closed, press/pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

Power window switches

① Left front door
② Right front door
③ Left rear door
④ Right rear door

WARNING

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident. The power windows continue to function until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.
– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. Pinching could cause serious injuries. ▶

– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

– The windows will automatically lower approximately 0.4 inches (10 mm) when you open the doors.
– When the window in the driver's or front passenger's door is completely open, it will raise approximately 1 inch (25 mm) when the door is opened. The window will lower again when you close the door.
– You can still open and close the windows for approximately 10 minutes after turning the ignition off. The power windows do not switch off until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.

Convenience opening

All of the windows and the sunroof can be opened at once.*

The settings in the Infotainment system specify which windows will open.

Convenience opening feature

▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key until all of the windows reach the desired position and the sunroof* is tilted open.

Setting convenience opening in the Infotainment system

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking** > **Long-press to open windows**.

To enable convenience opening of the windows and the roof*, the **Front windows**, **Rear windows** and **Roof** functions must be switched **On**.

WARNING

For security reasons, the windows and the sunroof* can only be opened with the remote control key at a maximum distance of approximately 6 feet (2 m) from the vehicle.

Correcting power window malfunctions

You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

▸ Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
▸ Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

Sunroof

Description

Applies to: vehicles with sliding/tilting sunroof

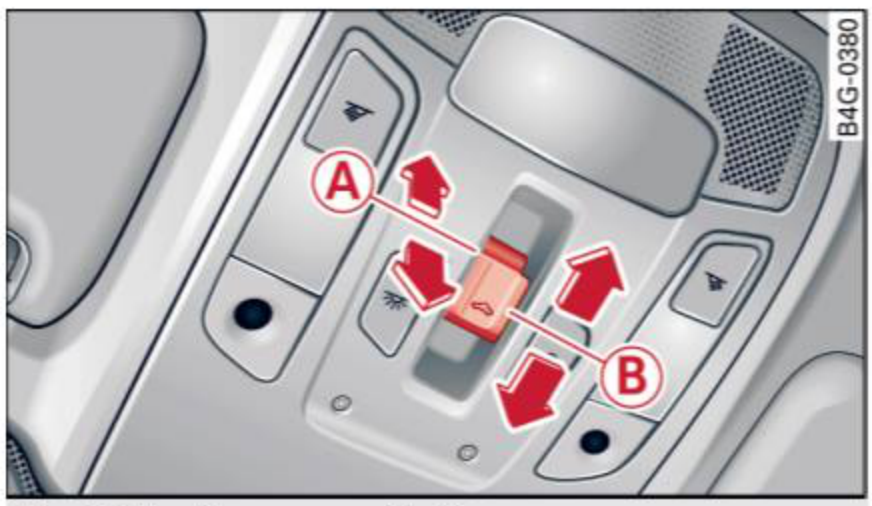


Fig. 30 Headliner: sunroof button

Ⓐ Tilting/sliding

▸ To tilt the sunroof completely, press the switch briefly to the second level.
▸ To open the sunroof completely, pull the switch briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first level until the desired position is reached.

Ⓑ Opening/sliding (version 1)

▸ To move the roof into the reduced wind noise position, press the button back briefly to the second level. The roof will open all the way if you press the button back to the second level again.
▸ To close the sunroof completely, press the switch forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch forward/back to the first level until the desired position is reached.

Ⓑ Opening/sliding (version 2)

▸ To open the sunroof completely, press the switch back to just before the second level. ▶

- ▸ To close the sunroof completely, press the switch forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch forward/back to the first level until the desired position is reached.

The sunshade can be opened and closed by hand when the roof is closed. The sunshade opens automatically when the roof is opened.

You can still operate the sliding/tilting sunroof for about 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off. The switch is deactivated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.

WARNING

Pay careful attention when closing the sliding/tilting sunroof - otherwise serious injury could result! Always take the ignition key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Note

Always close your sliding/tilting sunroof when leaving your vehicle. Sudden rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment.

Tips

- For information on convenience opening, refer to ⇨ *page 36*.
- The sunroof will only open down to -20 °C (-4 °F).

Sunroof power emergency closing

Applies to: vehicles with sliding/tilting sunroof

If the sunroof detects an object in its path when it is closing, it will open again automatically. In this case, you can close the roof with the power emergency closing function.

- ▸ Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the switch until the roof closes.

If you let go of the switch early, the sunroof will open again.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 31 Garage door opener: examples of usage for different systems

With the garage door opener (HomeLink), you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. Three buttons are integrated in the headliner that can be programmed to up to three remote controls.

To be able to operate systems using the garage door opener, the buttons in the headliner must first be programmed.

WARNING

When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.

Tips

- For security reasons, we recommend that you clear the programmed buttons before selling the vehicle.
- For additional information about HomeLink, visit www.homelink.com.
- For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 258*.

Programming buttons

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 32 Headliner: controls

You can program both fixed code and rolling code systems using this procedure.

Programming/reprogramming buttons

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press and hold the button in the headliner that you would like to program for at least 10 seconds. Or
- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Program garage door opener**.
- ▸ Follow the instructions in the Infotainment system.

Deleting button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be deleted individually. They must be deleted all at once. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Clear program settings** > **Yes**.

Displaying the version/status/country code

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Version information**.

Tips

The garage door opener may need to be synchronized with the system motor after the programming. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for doing this.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

Requirements: the button in the headliner must be programmed ⇨ *page 38* and the vehicle must be within range of the system, such as the garage door.

- ▸ Press the button to open the garage door. The LED Ⓐ ⇨ *page 38, fig. 32* blinks or turns on.
- ▸ Press the button again to open the garage door.

Tips

When opening or closing the garage door, do not press and hold the button longer ten seconds or the garage door opener will switch to programming mode.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 33 Instrument panel: light switch with all-weather lights

Light switch

Turn the switch to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the symbol turns on.

O - The lights are off or the daytime running lights are on:

- **USA models:** The daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 33* is in the **O** position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions). The **Daytime running lights** function can be turned on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 41*, ⇨ ⚠.
- **Canada models:** The daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 33* is in the **O** position, the position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions) ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO - automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels.

- Parking lights

- Low beam headlights

- All-weather lights

- Rear fog lights

All-weather lights

The front lights are adjusted automatically so that there is less glare for the driver from his or her own lights, for example when roads are wet.

Automatic dynamic headlight range control system

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control system so that there is less glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range also adjusts automatically when braking and accelerating.

Light functions

The following light functions may be available depending on vehicle equipment and only function when the light switch is in the AUTO position.

Static cornering light* - the cornering light switches on automatically at speeds up to approximately 44 mph (70 km) when the steering wheel is at a certain angle. The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

WARNING

- Automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually based on the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beams under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark .
- To prevent glare for traffic behind your vehicle, the rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulations.
- Always observe legal regulations when using the lighting systems described.

Tips

- The light sensor for the automatic headlights is located in the rearview mirror mount. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
- Some exterior lighting functions can be adjusted ⇨ *page 41*.

– If you turn off the ignition while the exterior lights are on and open the door, a warning tone sounds.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Turn signal and high beam lever

The turn signal lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

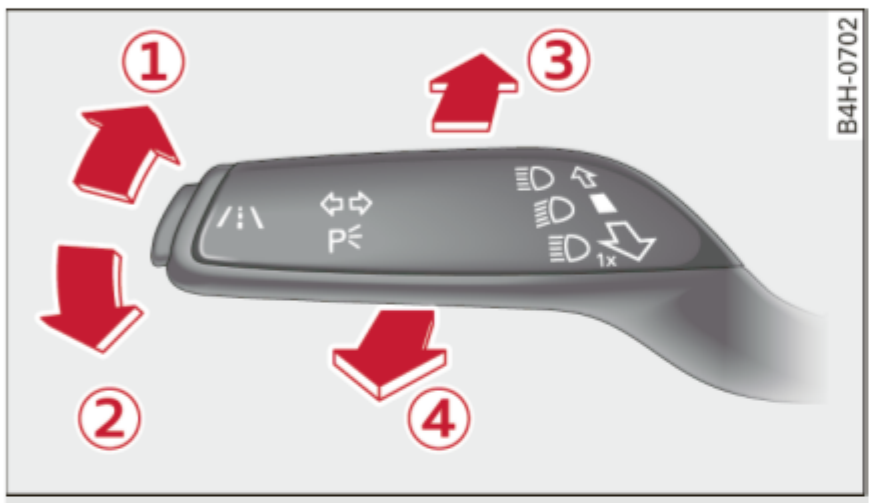


Fig. 34 Turn signal and high beam lever

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on.

① - Right turn signal

② - Left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

High beams and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - High beams on (vehicles with High beam assistant* ⇨ *page 40*)

④ - High beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

WARNING

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

High beam assistant

Applies to: vehicles with high beam assistant

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed and other environmental and traffic conditions.

Activating high beam assistant

Requirement: the light switch must be set to the AUTO position and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 41*.

▸ To activate the high beam assistant, tap the lever forward ③. The indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beam headlights are switched on/off automatically. The indicator light also turns on if the high beams are switched on.

Switching the high beams on/off manually

If the high beams did not switch on/off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

▸ To switch the high beams on manually, tap the lever forward ③. The indicator light turns on.
▸ To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

▸ To operate the headlight flasher when the high beam assistant is activated and high beams are switched off, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant remains active. ▶

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Headlight assist: System fault

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. You can still switch the high beams on or off manually.

Headlight assist: Unavailable No camera view

The camera view is blocked, for example by a sticker or debris.

The sensor is located between the interior rear-view mirror and the windshield. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.

WARNING

High beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and switching them manually depending on light and visibility conditions. It may be necessary to operate them manually in situations such as:

- In adverse weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain, blowing snow or spraying water.
- On roads where oncoming traffic may be partially obscured, such as expressways.
- When there are road users that do not have sufficient lighting, such as bicyclers or vehicles with dirty tail lamps.
- In tight curves and on steep hills.
- In poorly lit areas.
- With strong reflectors, such as signs.
- If the area of the windshield near the sensor is fogged over, dirty, icy or covered with a sticker.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Headlights activation time - you can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Auto-dimming high beams* - you can switch the high beam assistant* **On** and **Off**.

Daytime running lights*

USA models: the daytime running lights can be switched on/off. Select **On** or **Off**.

Canada models: this function cannot be switched off. They activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Coming home, Leaving home

The coming home function illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you turn the ignition off and open the driver's door. To turn the function on, select **Lights when leaving car** > **On**.

The leaving home illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you unlock the vehicle. To turn the function on, select **Lights when unlocking car** > **On**.

The coming home and leaving home functions only operate when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Emergency flashers



Fig. 35 Center console: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers makes other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

▸ Press the ⚠ button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the ▶

turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Interior lighting

Front and rear interior lighting



Fig. 36 Front headliner: interior lighting controls



Fig. 37 Rear headliner: Reading light

Press the corresponding button ⇨ *fig. 36*:

- Interior lighting on/off

- Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

- Reading lights on/off

* - Switching the rear reading lights on/off from the cockpit.

Ambient lighting

Applies to: vehicles with interior lighting

You can adjust the brightness of the interior lighting.

- In the Infotainment system, select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting** > **Brightness**.
- To increase or reduce the brightness, turn the knob and press it.

The interior lighting turns on when you switch the headlights on while the ignition is on.

Tips

The setting is automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is being used.

Instrument illumination

The brightness of the illumination for the instruments, display and head-up display can be adjusted.*



Fig. 38 Instrument illumination

- Press the knob to release it.
- Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
- Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 39 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position:

/ - adjusts the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heat the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folds the exterior mirrors*. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 31*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's exterior mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (convex or aspheric*) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. You may estimate incorrectly when you use these mirrors to gauge your distance from the vehicles behind you when changing lanes, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– If the mirror housing was moved by force (for example, by running into an object when maneuvering the vehicle), the mirror must be folded all the way in using the power folding function. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this would impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

Tips

– If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.
– The exterior mirror settings are stored with the memory function* ⇨ *page 49*.

Dimming the mirrors

Your vehicle is equipped with a manual or automatic dimming rearview mirror.*

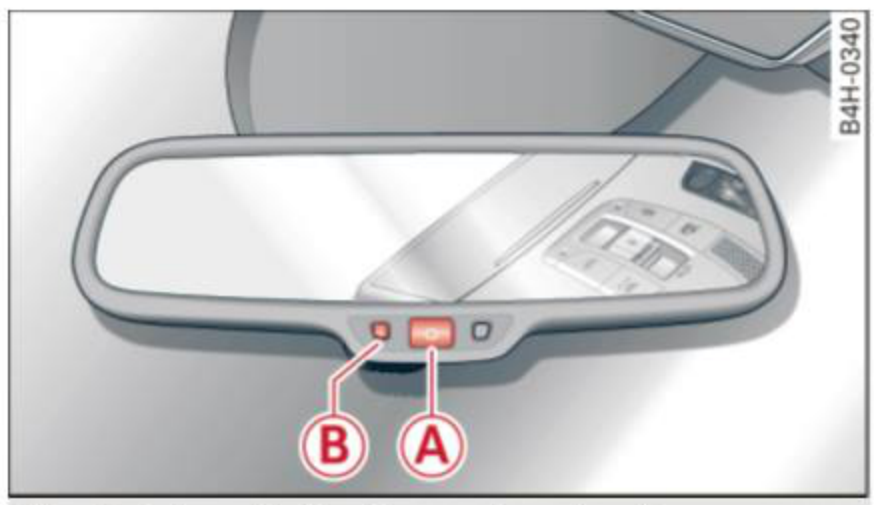


Fig. 40 Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back. ▶

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ Press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 40*. The indicator light Ⓑ turns on. Interior and exterior mirrors* will dim when there is incoming light (such as headlights from the rear).

WARNING

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary.

– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, flush them thoroughly with a large amount of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces and paint. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors

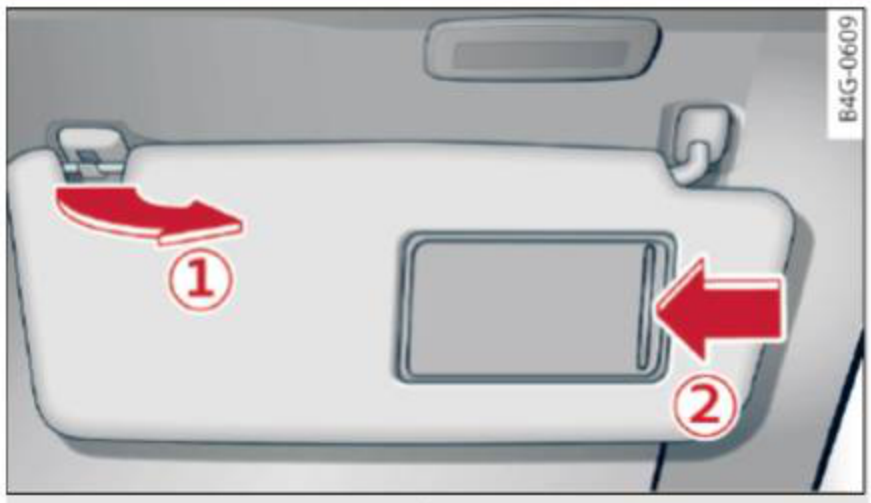


Fig. 41 Front passenger's side: sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and front passenger can be released from their mounts and turned toward the doors ①.

The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror ② opens.

Sunshade

Applies to: vehicles with sunshade

The sunshade is located on the luggage compartment shelf.

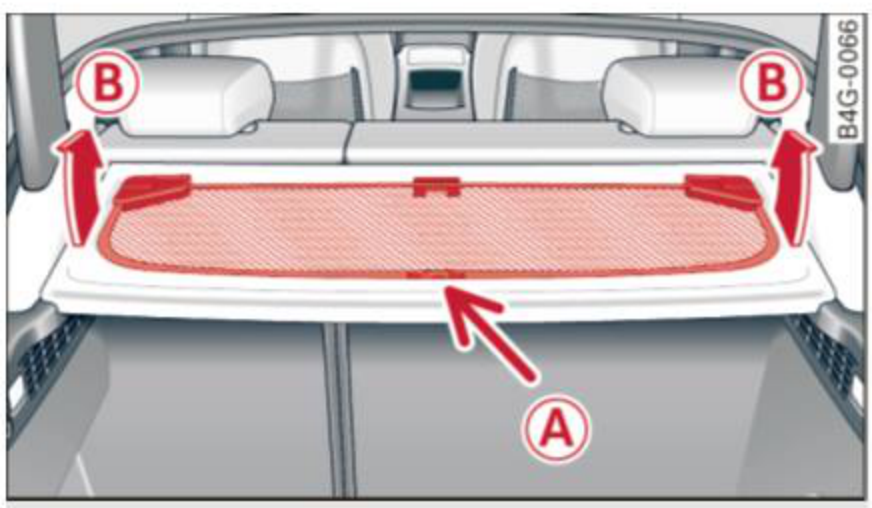


Fig. 42 Sunshade in lowered position

When the sunshade is in the lowered position, it is secured in the retainer Ⓐ.

▸ To raise Ⓑ the sunshade, remove it from the retainer. ▶

WARNING

Do not use the sunshade to secure cargo. The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover could endanger all vehicle occupants during sudden braking maneuvers or in a crash.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

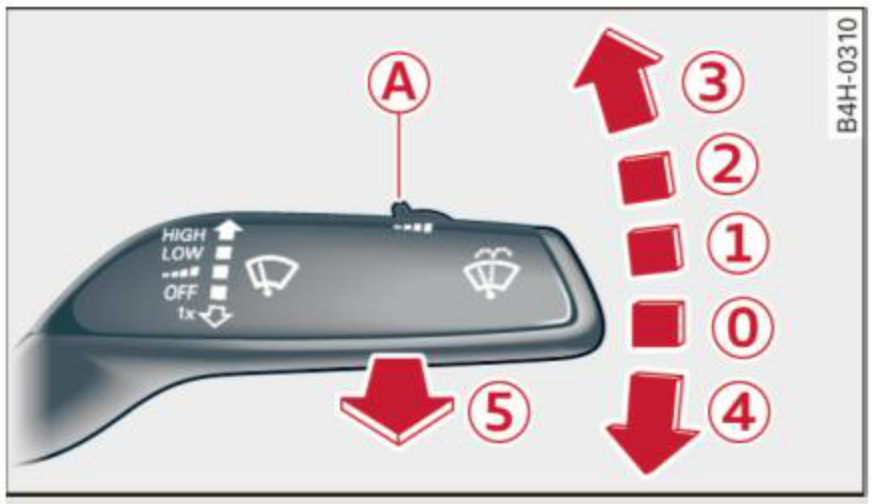


Fig. 43 Windshield wiper lever

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - Windshield wipers off

① - Rain sensor mode. The windshield wipers switch on once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h) and it is raining. The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor that is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode in the Infotainment system, which switches the intermittent mode on. Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Rain sensor** > **Off**. In intermittent mode, you can adjust the interval time using the switch Ⓐ.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - Clean the windshield. The wipers wipe one time after several seconds of driving to remove water droplets. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Clean the headlights*. The headlight washer system* operates only when the low beam headlights are on. If you move the lever to position ⑤, the headlights and the night vision assist camera* are cleaned at intervals.

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
- The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness or low sun, can result in increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 46, Replacing windshield wiper blades*.

Note

- If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
- The windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position 0) before using a car wash. This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.

▶

4G8012721BD

– Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
– The washer fluid nozzles for the windshield washer system are heated at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Use a soft cloth and a glass cleaner.

▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 46*.
▸ Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Replacing windshield wiper blades

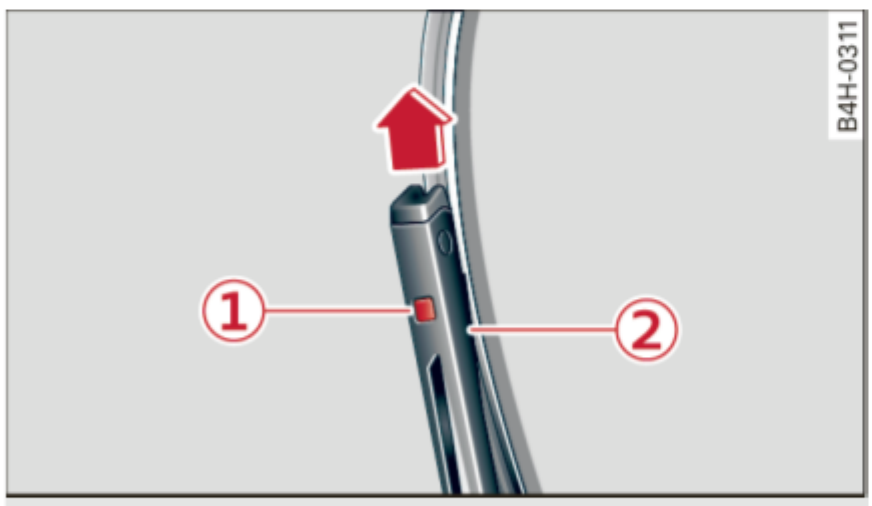


Fig. 44 Removing windshield wiper blades

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

▸ Switch the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever to position ④ briefly ⇨ *page 45, fig. 43*. The windshield wipers move into the service position.
▸ To bring the windshield wipers back to the normal position, switch the ignition on and hold the windshield wiper lever in position ④ until the windshield wipers go back to the normal position, or drive faster than 8 mph (12 km/h).

You can also turn the service position on or off in the Infotainment system:

▸ Switch the windshield wipers off (position ⓪ ⇨ *page 45, fig. 43*).
▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Service & control** > **Wiper change position**. > **On/Off**

Removing the wiper blade

▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
▸ Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 44* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
▸ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until it clicks into place.
▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
▸ Turn the service position off.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

– Only fold the windshield wipers away when they are in the service position. Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not move your vehicle or operate the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
– You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Seats and storage

General information

WARNING

Refer to ⇨ *page 129, Driving safety* for important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and follow for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

Front seats

Power seat adjustment

Applies to vehicles with power adjustable seats

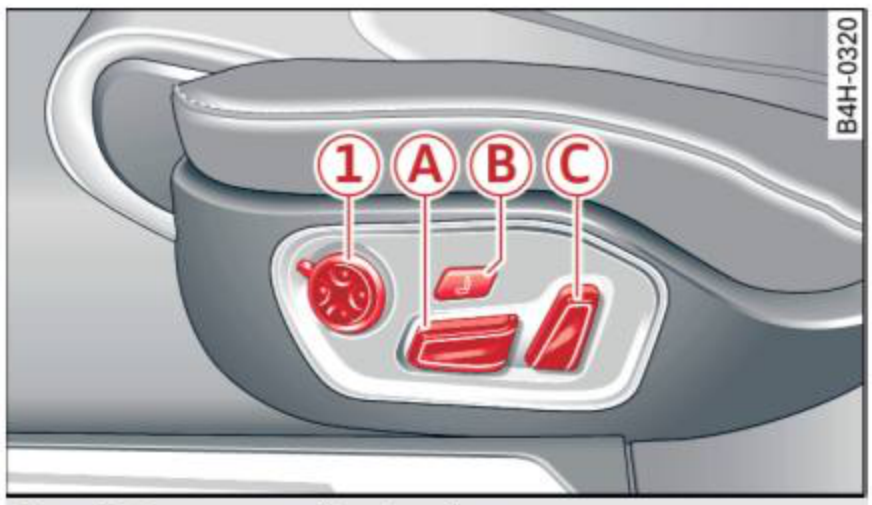


Fig. 45 Front seat: adjusting the seat

Ⓐ - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back.

Ⓐ - Moving the seat up/down: press the button up/down. To adjust the front seat cushion, press the front button up/down. To adjust the rear seat cushion, press the rear button up/down.

Ⓑ - Switching the massage function* on/off. Select the type of massage with the multifunction button ⇨ *page 47*.

Ⓒ - adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back.

① - lumbar support or multifunction button* ⇨ *page 47*. To adjust the lumbar support, press the button in the applicable location.

WARNING

– The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle because they could be injured.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary.
– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands causing injuries.
– The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.

Multifunction button

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction button

You can adjust the massage function, lumbar support, side bolsters and upper thigh support using the multifunction button.

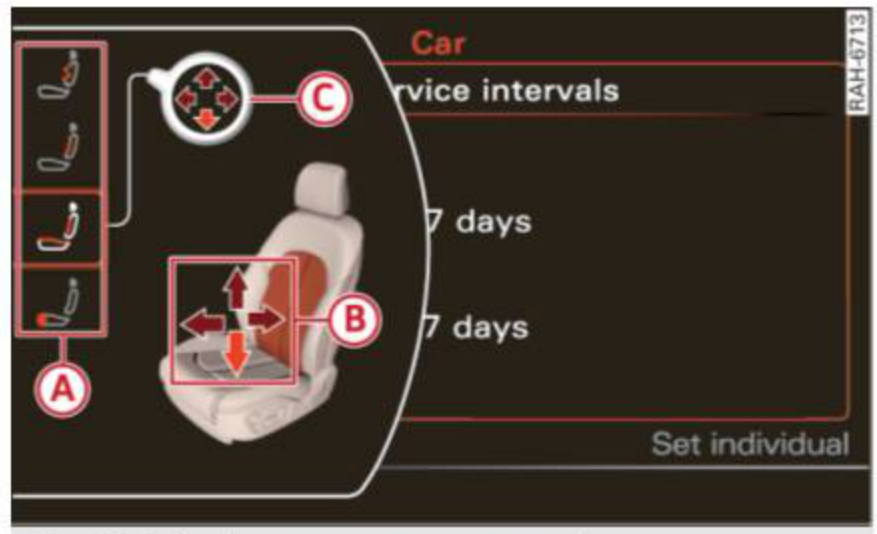


Fig. 46 Infotainment system: seat settings

Operating

▸ If you turn the multifunction button ① ⇨ *page 47, fig. 45* to the left or to the right, the possible seat settings Ⓐ are shown in the Infotainment system ⇨ *fig. 46*.
▸ To select a seat setting, turn the multifunction button ① in the corresponding direction until the desired seat setting is outlined in red.
▸ The arrows Ⓑ represent the possible adjustments. For example, to lower the lumbar support, press the multifunction button ① down. The corresponding arrow Ⓒ lights up.

The following seat settings Ⓐ are possible: ▶

Massage function* - select the **Wave, Pulse, Stretch, Lumbar** or **Shoulder** massage type or **off**. You can adjust the intensity of each massage from 1 through 5. You can switch the selected massage on/off using the button Ⓑ ⇨ *page 47, fig. 45*.

Lumbar support - you can adjust the lumbar support up/down and to be stronger/weaker.

Side section seat* - you can increase/decrease the lateral support in the seat using the side bolsters at the seat surface and the backrest.

Upper thigh support* - you can increase/decrease the upper thigh support.

Tips

– The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.
– The air in the side bolsters* is released as soon as the driver's door opens. This makes is possible to enter and exit the vehicle more comfortably. As soon as you start driving the vehicle, the side bolsters fill.

Front center armrest

There is a storage compartment under the armrest.



Fig. 47 Center armrest between the driver's/front passenger's seats.

Adjusting the center armrest

- ▸ To adjust the angle, raise the armrest from the starting position.
- ▸ To bring the armrest back into the starting position, raise it out of the top notch and fold it back down.

Opening the storage compartment

- ▸ Press the button -arrow- upward.

Head restraints

Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

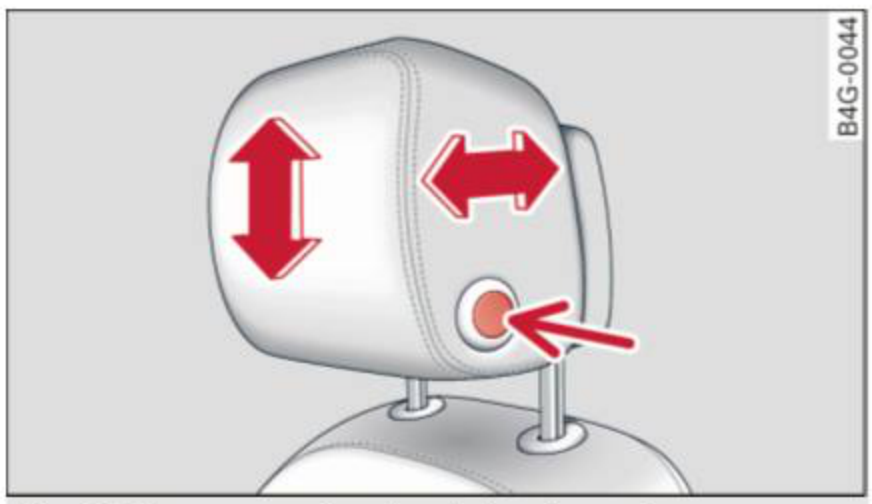


Fig. 48 Front seat: adjusting the head restraint

Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust as close to this position as possible. Push the head restraint as close as possible to the back of the head.

- ▸ To move the head restraint up or forward ⇨ *fig. 48*, slide it until it locks into place.
- ▸ To move the head restraint down or back, press the button on the side -arrow- and slide the head restraint until it locks into place.

WARNING

Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Proper adjustment of head restraints on page 132*.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

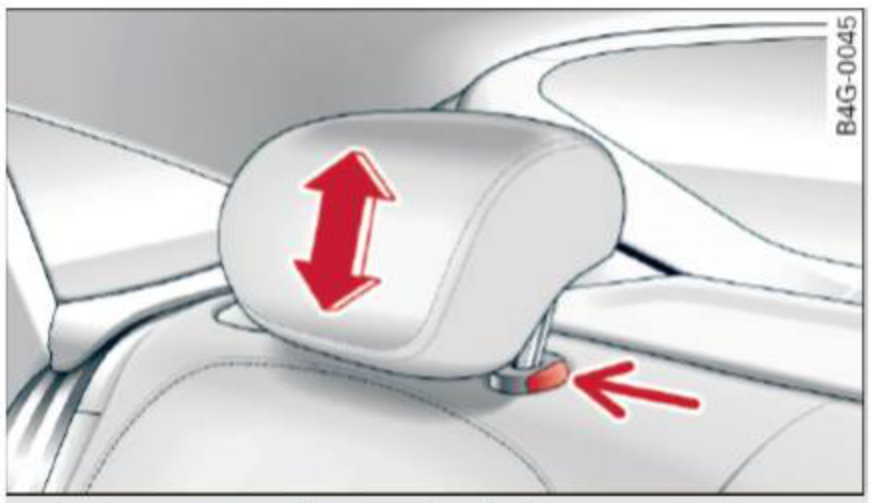


Fig. 49 Rear seat: adjusting the head restraint

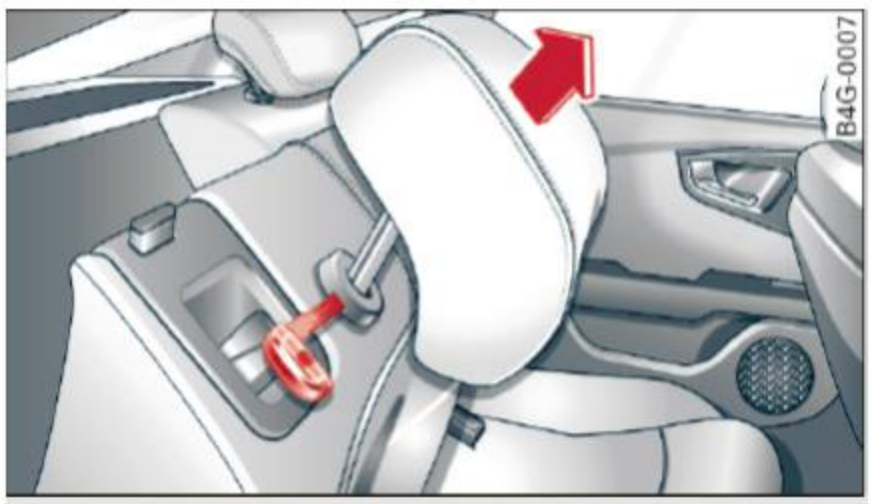


Fig. 50 Rear seat: removing the head restraint, release point

The rear seat head restraints must be raised to the highest position when passengers ride in the rear seats ⇨ ⚠ *in Proper adjustment of head restraints on page 132*

Moving the head restraints

- ▸ To move the head restraint up, hold it at the sides with both hands and slide it upward until you feel it click into place.
- ▸ To move the head restraint down, press the button (arrow) ⇨ *fig. 49* and slide the head restraint downward.

Removing the head restraints

- ▸ Fold the backrest forward ⇨ *page 54*.
- ▸ Move the head restraint upward as far as it can go.
- ▸ Press the release point ⇨ *fig. 50* using the mechanical key and press the button ⇨ *fig. 49*. Pull the head restraint out of the backrest at the same time ⇨ ⚠.

Installing the head restraints

- ▸ Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until the posts click into place.
- ▸ Press the button (arrow) ⇨ *fig. 49* and slide the head restraint all the way down. You should not be able to pull the head restraint out of the backrest without pressing the button.

⚠ WARNING

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Proper adjustment of head restraints on page 132*.

– Only remove the rear seat head restraints when necessary in order to install a child safety seat. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child safety seat is removed. Driving with the head restraints removed or not in the upright position increases the risk of serious injury.

Memory function

Description

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

Using the memory function, you can quickly and easily store a personal seat profile for the driver and front passenger and recall the settings. The memory function is controlled using the remote control key and the memory buttons in the driver's/front passenger's door*.

The driver's seat profile is stored again and assigned to the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When you open the door, the seat profile is automatically recalled. If two people use the vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses their “own” remote control key.

Two seat profiles can be stored using the memory buttons in the driver's/front passenger's door*. Once they are stored, these seat profiles can be selected at any time.

The following settings are stored: ▸

	Remote control key	Memory button	
	Driver	Driver	Front passenger
Seat	X	X	X
Steering wheel*	X	X	
Both exterior mirrors*	X	X	

Remote control key

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The driver's seat profile can be assigned to the remote control key when the vehicle is locked.

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Driver's seat** > **Remote control key** > **On**.

Tips

If you do not wish to have the seat profile for another driver assigned to the remote control key, switch the memory function off in the Infotainment system or using the OFF button ⇨ *page 50*.

Memory buttons

Applies to: vehicles with memory function



Fig. 51 Driver's door: memory function buttons

The memory buttons are located in the driver's/front passenger's* door.

Switching the memory function on/off

- Press the OFF button to switch the memory function on/off. The LED in the button turns on when the memory function is off. Seat profiles are neither stored nor recalled.

Storing a seat profile

- Press the SET button. When the word **SET** lights up, the memory is ready to store settings.
- Now press a memory button briefly. A tone confirms that the settings were stored.

Accessing a seat profile

- If the driver's door is open and the ignition is switched off, press the memory button.
- If the driver's door is closed or the ignition is switched on, press and hold the memory button until the seat adjustment is complete.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary, otherwise there is a risk of an accident.
- If necessary, you can stop the recall process by pressing the OFF button or any memory button.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat in the Infotainment system

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The driver can move the front passenger's seat into various positions.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Front passenger's seat** > **Adjust seat position**.
- You can now adjust the front passenger's seat using the driver's seat buttons ⇨ *page 47, fig. 45*.

Align with driver's seat

- To transfer the settings from the driver's seat to the front passenger's seat, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Front passenger's seat** > **Align with driver's seat**. ▶

▸ Press and hold the control knob until the adjusting process is complete.

Tips

The lumbar support and upper thigh support settings are not transferred when aligning the front passenger's seat with the driver's seat.

Ashtray

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray



Fig. 52 Center console: front ashtray

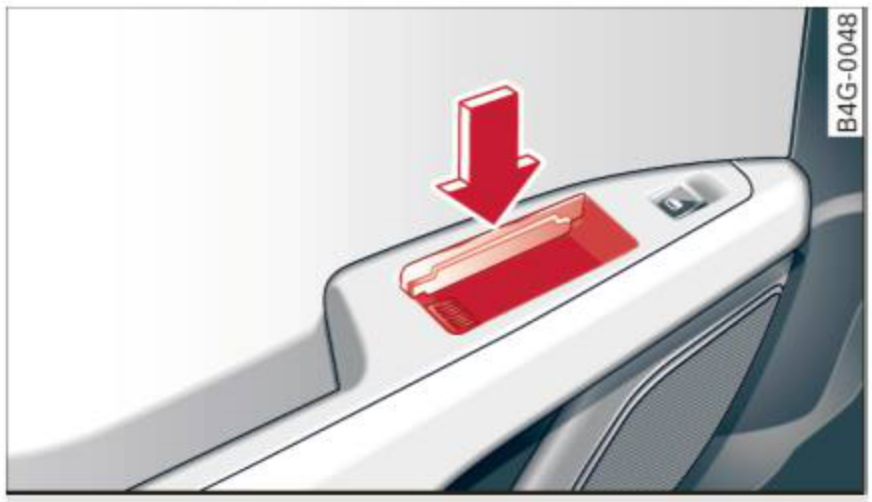


Fig. 53 Door trim: rear ashtray

Opening/closing

▸ To open the front ashtray, slide the cover up.
▸ To close the front ashtray, press down on the cover.
▸ To open the rear ashtray, tap the cover on the rim.

Emptying

▸ To empty the front ashtray, pull it upward and out.
▸ To empty the rear ashtray, press the cover downward when it is open ⇨ *fig. 53*. The ashtray will lift up out of its mount.
▸ To insert the ashtray again, press it down into the mount until it locks into place.

WARNING

Never use the ashtray to hold paper, because this increases the risk of a fire.

Cigarette lighter

Applies to: vehicles with a cigarette lighter



Fig. 54 Front center console: cigarette lighter

▸ Press the cigarette lighter in.
▸ Remove the cigarette lighter when it pops out.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

12 Volt sockets

Applies to: vehicles with 12 volt sockets

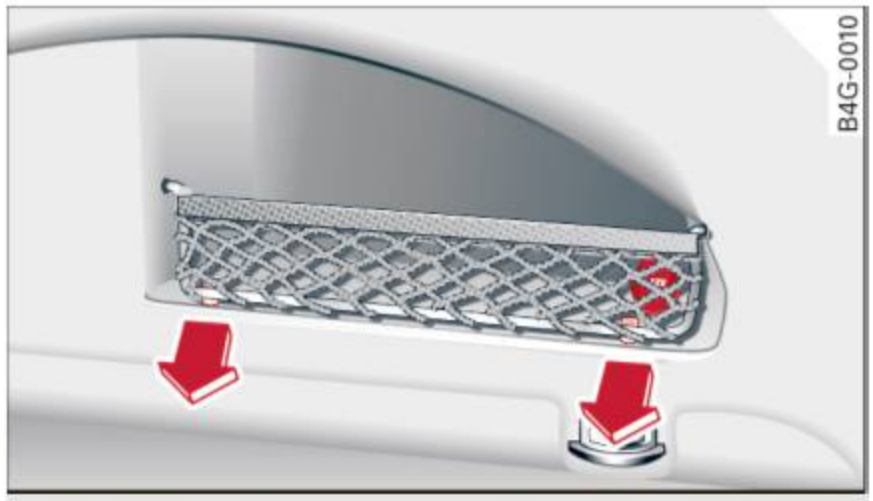


Fig. 55 Luggage compartment side trim: socket



Fig. 56 Example of a rear center console: sockets*

▸ To reach the 12-volt socket in the luggage compartment, press the net down or remove the bracket from the mounts ⇨ *fig. 55*.

There are additional 12 Volt socket in the center console under the center armrest* and in the rear ⇨ *fig. 56*.

The 12-volt sockets can be used for electrical accessories. The power usage must not exceed 120 watts.

WARNING

The sockets and the electrical accessories connected to them only function when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to the 12 Volt sockets or the cigarette lighter.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the sockets, only use plugs that fit correctly.

Storage

Cup holders



Fig. 57 Center console: front cup holder

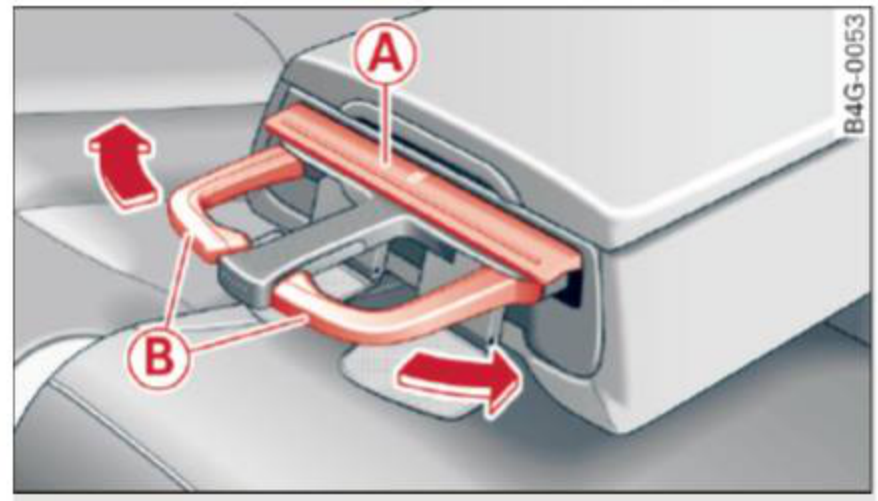


Fig. 58 Rear armrest: cup holder*

Front cup holders

▸ Tap on the cover in the center console to open the cup holders.

Rear cup holders*

▸ To open the cup holder, tap on the cover (🥤 symbol) Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 58*.
▸ To adjust the cup holder to fit the beverage container, push the corresponding arm Ⓑ in the direction of the arrow.
▸ Place the cup in the holder and release the arm. The arm swings back by itself and secures the beverage.
▸ To close the cup holders, press the center piece between both arms and push the cup holders all the way back into the slot. ▶

WARNING

- Do not put any hot beverages in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which can cause injury.
- Do not use any breakable beverage containers (for example, made out of glass or porcelain). You could be injured by them in the event of an accident.

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. If not, beverages could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment, such electronics or seat covers.

Cooled glove compartment

Applies to: vehicles with cooled glove compartment

The cooled glove compartment only functions when the A/C system is switched on.

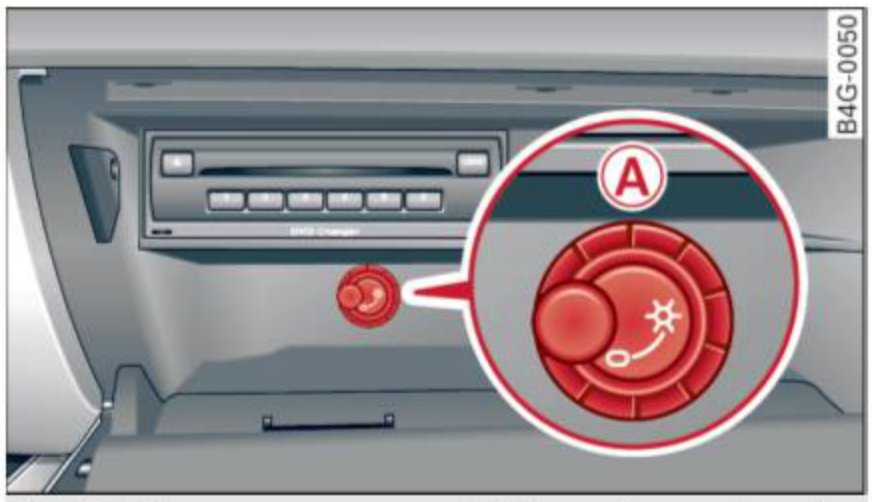


Fig. 59 Glove compartment: switching cooling mode on/off

- ▸ Turn the knob (A) counter-clockwise to switch the cooling on. The symbols on the knob indicate the correct position.
- ▸ Turn the knob (A) clockwise to switch the cooling off.

The glove compartment cooling mode only functions when the vehicle A/C system is switched on. If the heating is switched on, switching the glove compartment cooling mode off is recommended.

Other storage compartments

You will find a range of storage compartments and holders at different locations in the vehicle.

- Compartments in the doors
- Compartment in the glove compartment (cooled*). The glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key.
- Glasses holder* in the headliner (near the rear-view mirror)
- Storage compartment under the front center armrest*
- Compartments* on the backrests of the front seats
- Garment hooks on the sides of the pillars in the rear of the vehicle and in the rear grab handles
- Compartment in the rear center armrest
- Bag hooks in the luggage compartment

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.
- Always keep the lid of the compartment for (sun)glasses* closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or in the event of an accident.
- Any articles of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. The coat hooks are designed only for lightweight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle.
- Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 166, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.
- Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver's vision.
- The coat hooks must only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side curtain airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a crash.
- Do not use coat hangers for hanging clothing on the coat hooks as this can interfere with proper deployment of the side curtain airbags in an accident.

– Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop.

Note

Objects on the rear shelf that rub against the rear window can damage the rear window heating wires.

Roof rack

Applies to: vehicles with roof rack

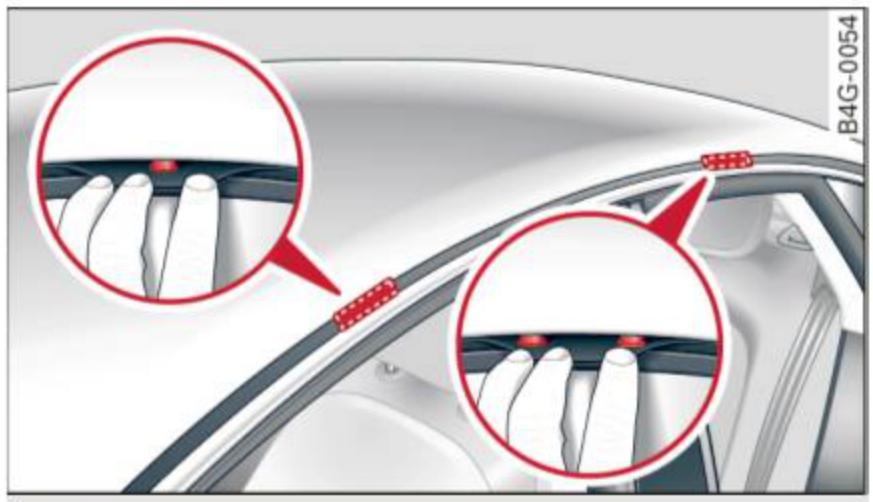


Fig. 60 Attachment points for the roof rack

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– Only a specially designed roof rack may be used on your vehicle. These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments/carrier systems are necessary to transport luggage and sports equipment. We recommend roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program.
– When installing the roof rack, make sure that it is secured only at the designated points on the roof ⇨ *fig. 60*.
– Note the permitted axle load, permitted total weight, and permitted roof load of your vehicle ⇨ *page 254*. The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. However, you must also note the permitted load of the carrier system being used.

WARNING

– Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– Using a roof rack system increases the risk of an accident, because it changes the vehicle handling characteristics while driving by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.

Note

Make sure that the luggage compartment lid and the sunroof* do not come into contact with objects on the roof when they are open.

For the sake of the environment

Your vehicle will require more fuel due to the increased wind resistance. So remove the roof rack after using it.

Luggage compartment

General information

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 134, Storing cargo correctly*.

Increasing the size of the luggage compartment

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrests

The rear seat backrests can be folded forward either separately or together.

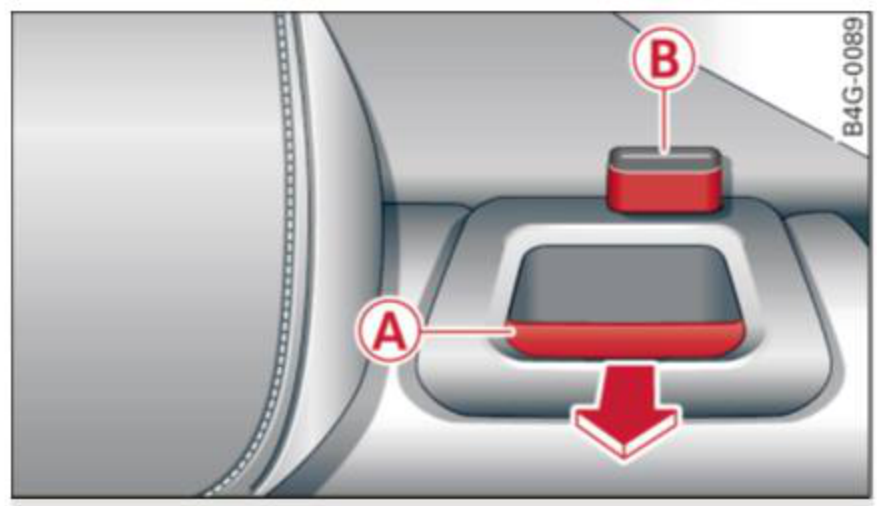


Fig. 61 Backrest: release lever and securing knob ▶

Folding the backrest forward

▸ Pull the release lever Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 61* in the direction of the arrow to fold the backrest forward.

Folding the backrest back into the upright position

▸ Fold the backrest back up again until it latches and the red marking Ⓑ is no longer visible ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– Be careful when folding the backrests forward! Not paying attention and not checking when folding the backrests can lead to pinching injuries.
– The backrest must be latched securely to ensure that the safety belt is protecting the center seating position.
– The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking.

Note

– If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
– To reduce the risk of damage, move the rear head restraints down before folding the rear backrests forward ⇨ *page 49*.
– When folding the backrest forward, make sure the outer safety belts are in the belt guide recess so that they do not get pinched in the backrest lock and damaged. Other objects should be removed from the rear bench seat to protect the backrest from damage.

Tie-downs

Applies to: vehicles with tie-downs



Fig. 62 Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs

▸ To secure objects, for example using the luggage compartment net, fold the tie-down retainer upward.

Luggage compartment net

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment net

The cargo net prevents small objects from sliding.



Fig. 63 Luggage compartment: cargo net stretched out

▸ Attach the hooks for the luggage compartment net in the tie-downs.

⚠ WARNING

For strength reasons, only objects with a maximum weight of 10 lbs (5 kg) should be secured in the luggage compartment net. Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

Luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover consists of two parts.

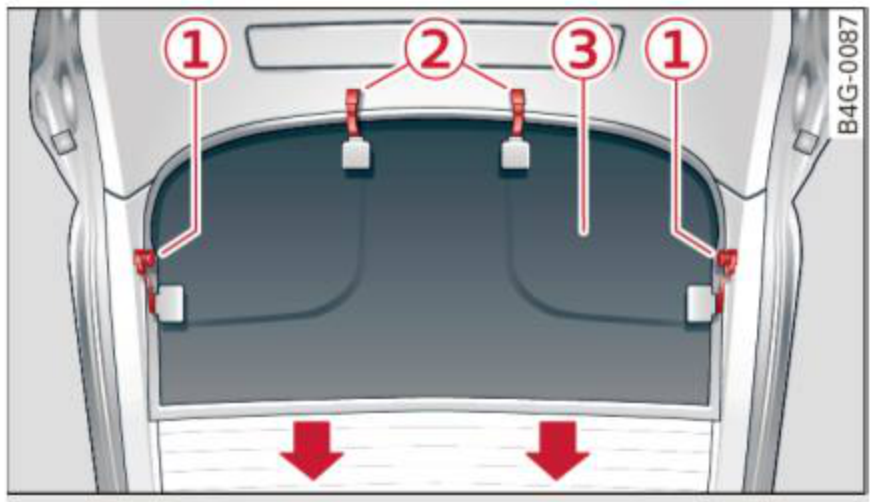


Fig. 64 Cover in the open luggage compartment lid

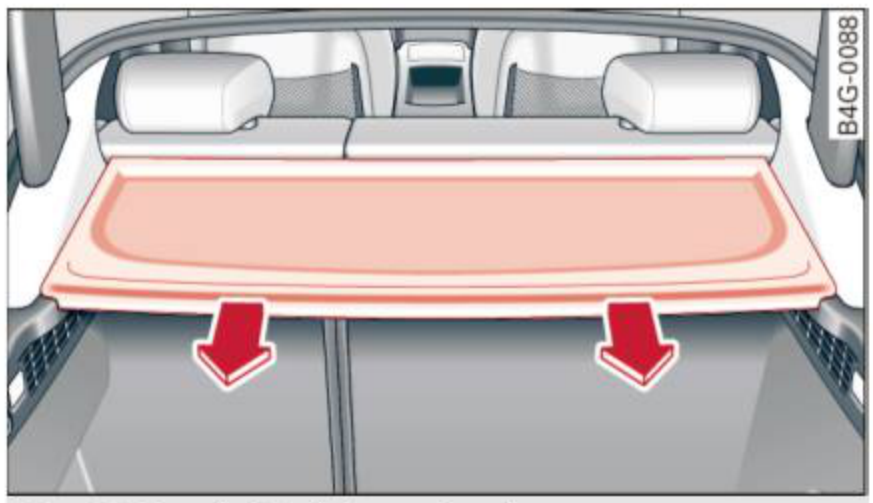


Fig. 65 Cover behind the rear bench seat

Removing the cover in the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Remove the knobs ① ⇨ *fig. 64* from the ball mounts.
- ▸ Pull the cover ③ out of the retainers ② in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the cover in the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Slide the cover upward into the retainers ②.
- ▸ Press the knobs ① onto the ball mounts.

Removing the cover behind the rear bench seat

- ▸ Pull the cover ⇨ *fig. 65* back.
- ▸ Pull the cover upward to release.

Installing the cover behind the rear bench seat

- ▸ Place the left and right sides of the cover into the mounts on the side trim.
- ▸ Slide the cover forward until it locks into place.

WARNING

- – To reduce the risk of accidents, never install the luggage compartment cover without securing it.
- – The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover could endanger all vehicle occupants during sudden braking maneuvers or in a crash.

Note

The defogger and antenna wires in the rear window can be damaged by objects on the luggage compartment cover rubbing against them.

Storage hooks

Applies to: vehicles with bag hooks



Fig. 66 Luggage compartment: storage hooks

You can also use the hooks to hang light purses, bags, etc.

WARNING

The hooks can hold a maximum weight of 6.6 lbs (3 kg). Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

Pass-through with ski bag

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through and ski bag

Long objects, such as skis or snowboards, can be transported in the ski bag.*



Fig. 67 Backrest: pass-through cover

- ▸ To load the ski bag in the vehicle, fold the rear center armrest down.
- ▸ Fold the pass-through cover down ⇨ *fig. 67*.
- ▸ Push the packed ski bag* through the opening from the luggage compartment. The zipper must face toward the rear.
- ▸ Secure the ski bag ⇨ *page 57*.

Tips

You can also open the pass-through from the luggage compartment. Push the release button down and push the cover forward.

Securing the ski bag

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through and ski bag

The ski bag must be secured in the luggage compartment.*

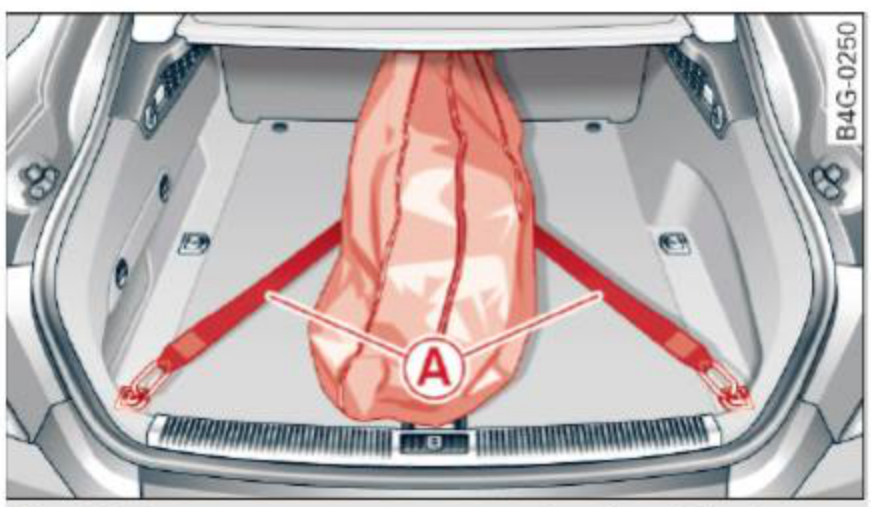


Fig. 68 Luggage compartment: securing the ski bag*

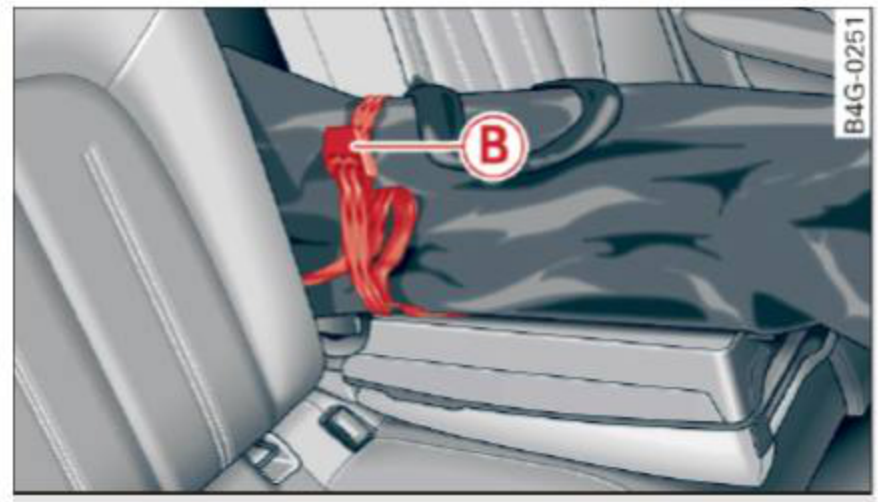


Fig. 69 Rear bench seat: securing the ski bag

There are two straps with hooks Ⓐ on the bottom side of the ski bag* ⇨ *fig. 68*. There is also a securing strap Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 69* on the ski bag.

- ▸ To secure the ski bag in the luggage compartment, engage the hooks into the rear tie-downs ⇨ *fig. 68*.
- ▸ Tighten the strap on the ski bag to prevent the objects in the bag from sliding around ⇨ *fig. 69*.

WARNING

– The ski bag is only intended for transporting skis and other light objects. To reduce the risk of serious injuries, never transport heavy or sharp objects in the ski bag.
– After loading, the ski bag must be secured with the strap.
– Make sure that all objects that you are transporting in the pass-through are secure. They could slide around and increase the risk of injury when braking or during an accident.

Tips

– Only fold the ski bag up if it is dry.
– When transporting skis or snowboards, tighten the securing strap between the bindings.
– Lay skis in the bag with the points facing forward and snowboards and ski pole points facing the rear.

4G8012721BD

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

The climate control system warms, cools and removes humidity from the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and sunroof* are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

In all heating mode functions, except for defrost, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a sufficient temperature.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

Key recognition

Applies to: vehicles with deluxe automatic climate control

The blower setting and air distribution are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key that you are using.

Applies to: vehicles with 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control

The climate control settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

WARNING

Poor visibility can lead to accidents.

– For safer driving, keep all windows free of ice, snow and fog.
– Become familiar as quickly as possible with the correct use and function of the climate control system, especially with the defrosting and defogging function.
– When the temperature is below freezing, only use the windshield washer system after the windshield has been warmed by the climate control system. The washer fluid could freeze on the windshield and impair visibility.

Note

– If you suspect that the climate control system is damaged, switch the system off to prevent further damage and have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Repairs to the Audi climate control system require special technical knowledge and special tools. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

For the sake of the environment

To save fuel, turn off cooling mode by pressing the A/C button. This will also reduce emissions.

Tips

– To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow or leaves.
– Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
– The energy management system may temporarily switch off certain functions, such as the seat heating* or rear window defogger. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.

Automatic climate control

Applies to: vehicles with deluxe automatic climate control

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C).



Fig. 70 Deluxe automatic climate control: controls

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. The dial adjusts the temperature and the blower. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

Adjusting the temperature

The temperature can be adjusted individually for the driver and front passenger using the dials (1) and (3).

Adjusting the blower

Using the dial (2), you can manually adjust the amount of air generated by the blower to suit your preferences. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting air distribution

You can manually select the vents where the air will flow. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Switching recirculation mode on/off

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. Switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic is recommended ⇨ ⚠.

The AUTO button or FRONT button switches recirculation mode off.

OFF Switching the climate control system on/off

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. It also switches on when you press the blower control. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off.

A/C Switching cooling mode on/off

The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

FRONT Switching the defroster on/off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. ▶

The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set to approximately 72 °F (22 °C).

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

REAR Switching the rear window defogger on/off

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after a few minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window heater from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than 2 seconds. This is stored until the ignition is switched off.

Adjusting seat heating*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

Air vents

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

4-zone deluxe automatic climate control

Applies to: vehicles with 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C).



Fig. 71 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control: controls

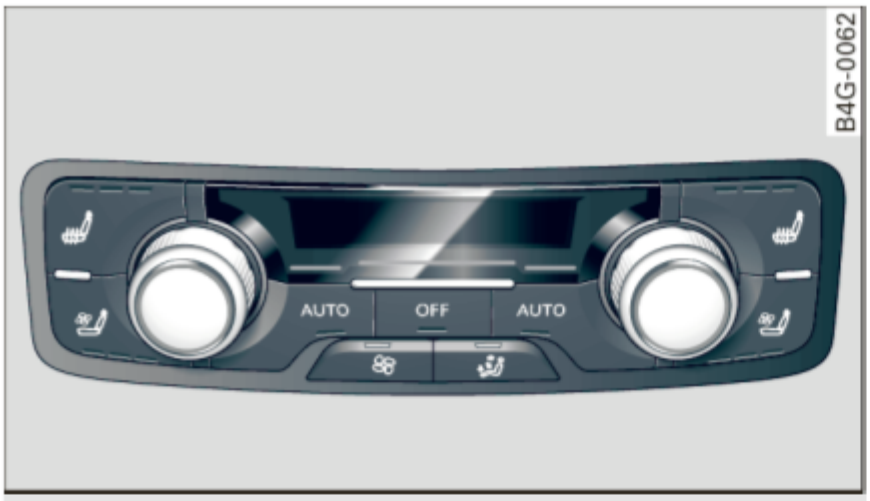


Fig. 72 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control system: rear controls

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. Use the controls to adjust the temperature, the blower speed and the air distribution. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on. The front settings are shown in the climate control system display and in the Infotainment system display for a few seconds. The driver and front passenger settings can be adjusted separately.

The settings can also be adjusted in the rear ⇨ *fig. 72*.

OFF Switching the climate control system on/off

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. It also switches on when you press the control. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off. The OFF button in the rear only switches the A/C system on/off in the rear of the vehicle.

A/C Switching cooling mode on/off

The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

Switching recirculation mode on/off

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. Switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic is recommended ⇨ ⚠.

The AUTO button or FRONT button switches recirculation mode off.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

If press and hold the button longer, 72 °F (22 °C) will be set.

Adjusting the temperature

Temperatures between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C) can be set. If outside of this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear in the climate control system display. In both settings, the climate control runs constantly at the maximum cooling or heating level. The temperature is not regulated.

Adjusting the blower

You can adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting air distribution

You can manually select the vents where the air will flow. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting seat heating*/seat ventilation*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating/seat ventilation on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating/seat ventilation off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

FRONT Switching the defroster on/off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation ▶

mode switches off. The temperature should be set to approximately 72 °F (22 °C).

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

REAR Switching the rear window defogger on/off

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after a few minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window heater from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than 2 seconds. This is stored until the ignition is switched off.

SYNC Synchronization

When synchronization is switched on, the settings for the driver's side are applied to the front passenger's side (except for seat heating/ventilation*). The settings in the rear are also synchronized. Synchronization switches off when the settings are adjusted individually for the front passenger's side or for the rear.

You can synchronize the settings in a row by pressing and holding a control. For example, to apply the settings for the front passenger's side to the driver's side, press and hold the control on the front passenger's side. The same applies to the rear.

Residual heat*

With the ignition turned off, you can activate the residual heat function by pressing the button ⇨ *fig. 71*. The residual heat from the coolant is used to heat the vehicle interior. The residual heat function switches off automatically after about 30 minutes.

Air vents

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console and door pillars using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

Basic settings

The climate control system basic settings are accessed in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **AC**.

Rear seat settings*

When this function is selected, all settings for the rear can be adjusted through the climate control system in the cockpit. The climate control system settings cannot be adjusted in the rear seat at the same time. This function switches off after a certain period of time or when one of the controls in the cockpit is pressed.

Automatic recirculation*

The sensitivity level of the automatic recirculation mode can be set at various levels from **Off** to **Sensitive**. Recirculation mode is controlled automatically. If the windows fog up, press the FRONT button.

Footwell temperature*

You can adjust the footwell temperature so that it is cooler or warmer.

Steering wheel heating

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

The steering wheel rim can be heated.



Fig. 73 Steering wheel: steering wheel heating button

- Press the button to switch steering wheel heating on/off. The message **Steering wheel heating on**/**Steering wheel heating off** appears in the instrument cluster display.

The temperature is maintained at a constant level when steering wheel heating is switched on.

The steering wheel heating settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Driving

General information

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in for the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km). Do not drive at speeds that will exceed 2/3 of the maximum permitted engine speed (RPM) for the first 600 miles (1,000 km), and avoid full acceleration during this period. You may gradually start increasing the RPM and the speed between 600 miles (1,000 km) and 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

During the first hours of use, the engine has a higher internal friction than later on when all moving parts have settled into place with each other.

How the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) also affects the engine quality. Drive at moderate engine speeds after the initial break-in period, particularly when running a cold engine. This will reduce engine wear and improve the mileage.

Do not drive at too *low* of an engine speed (RPM). Shift down if the engine stops running "smoothly". Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced.

Reducing the risk of vehicle damage

Note

When driving on poor roads, by curbs and on steep ramps, make sure that low-hanging components such as the spoiler and exhaust system do not come into contact with these or they could be damaged. This especially applies to vehicles with low ground clearance and vehicles that are heavily loaded.

Warming up/cooling down

Applies to: S and RS models

By warming up/cooling down the engine carefully, you can help reduce unnecessary strain on your vehicle when driving in a sporty style.

The engine speed is limited when the engine is cold - the full engine output is not available. When the engine is at operating temperature, the engine speed limitation moves to a higher RPM range. Also, cold tires may not have full road gripping capabilities until they have warmed up.

Your vehicle also has an after-run cooling feature. However, cooling down is still important. The engine and the brakes as well as the exhaust system and the transmission become very hot when driving in a sporty style. Before you shut the vehicle off, you should cool down the vehicle by driving a few miles at low speeds with light acceleration.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to reduce the risk of vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

WARNING

After driving through water or mud, the effectiveness of the brakes may be reduced due to moisture on the brake rotors and brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brakes and restore the full braking effect.

Note

– Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.
– Always switch the Start/Stop system* off when driving through water ⇨ *page 70*.

Tips

– Determine the depth before driving through water.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.

▶

– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
– Avoid driving through salt water, because this can cause corrosion.

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact and the wear to the engine, brakes and tires depends mostly on your driving style. With an anticipatory and economic driving style, fuel consumption can be reduced by approximately 10-15%. The following tips will help you conserve the environment and your money at the same time.

Anticipatory driving

A vehicle uses the most fuel when accelerating. When you drive with anticipation, you do not need to brake as often and so you accelerate less. When possible, let your vehicle coast with a **gear engaged**, for example, when you notice that the next traffic light is red. This produces an engine braking effect, which helps to protect the brakes and tires and reduces the emissions and fuel consumption to zero (fuel shut-off during deceleration).

Shift efficiently

Upshifting *earlier* is an effective way to save fuel. Staying in a gear too long uses fuel unnecessarily.

Press down on the accelerator pedal slowly and avoid “kick-down”.

Avoid full acceleration

You should rarely travel at the maximum vehicle speed. High speeds cause a disproportionately high increase in fuel consumption, emissions and traffic noise. Slower driving saves fuel.

Reduce idling time

The Start/Stop system* helps to reduce the idling time automatically. In vehicles without the Start/Stop system*, it is efficient to switch the engine off when stopped at railroad crossings and long red lights. Stopping the engine for 30-40 seconds already saves more fuel than the amount of extra fuel needed to restart the engine.

It takes a very long time in idle to warm the engine up to operating temperature. Wear and emissions are especially high in the warm-up phase. Therefore, you should begin driving immediately after starting the engine. Avoid high RPMs while doing this.

Have maintenance performed regularly

By having maintenance performed regularly on your vehicle, you can help to reduce fuel consumption before you even start to drive. The maintenance condition of your vehicle not only affects traffic safety and long-term value but also impacts **fuel consumption**. A poorly maintained engine can lead to fuel consumption that is 10% higher than normal.

Avoid short trips

The engine and emissions control system must reach their optimal **operating temperature** to effectively reduce consumption and emissions.

A cold engine uses a disproportionately high amount of fuel. The engine reaches operating temperature and consumption normalizes only after approximately *2.5 miles* (4 km).

Check the tire pressure

To save fuel, make sure the tires are always inflated to the correct pressure ⇨ *page 215*. The fuel consumption can increase by 5% if the pressure is only 0.5 bar too low. Due to the increased rolling resistance, low tire pressures will also lead to greater tire **wear** and will affect driving behavior.

Do not drive on **winter tires** year-round, as this will consume up to 10% more fuel.

Eliminate unnecessary weight

Since every pound of extra **weight** increases fuel consumption, a quick inspection of the luggage compartment may be worth it to avoid unnecessary weight. ▶

4G8012721BD

When not being used, a roof rack should be removed to decrease the wind resistance of the vehicle. You will save approximately 12% of your fuel when at speeds from 62-75 mph (100-120 km/h).

Save energy

The engine drives the generator, which generates electricity; the fuel consumption also increases with the demand for electricity. Therefore, switch electrical equipment off when you no longer need it. Examples of equipment that uses a lot of energy are air blowers at a high setting, the rear window defogger and seat heating*.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.

Note

– Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
– Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
– Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

Steering

Manual steering wheel position adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel position is adjustable up and down and forward and back.

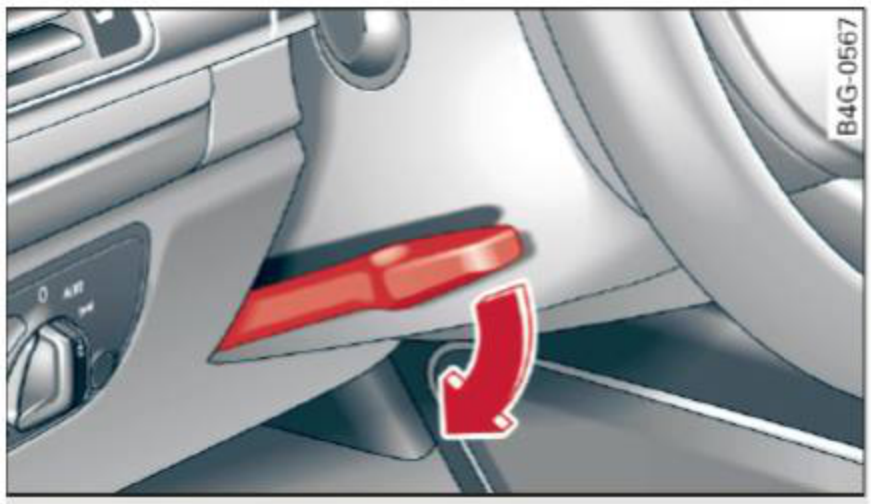


Fig. 74 Lever on the steering column

- ▸ Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever against the steering column until it is secure.

WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.

– Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
– Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 130, fig. 140*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.
– If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 in (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available. ▸

– If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
– Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Power steering wheel position adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with power steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel position can be adjusted electrically up and down and forward and back.

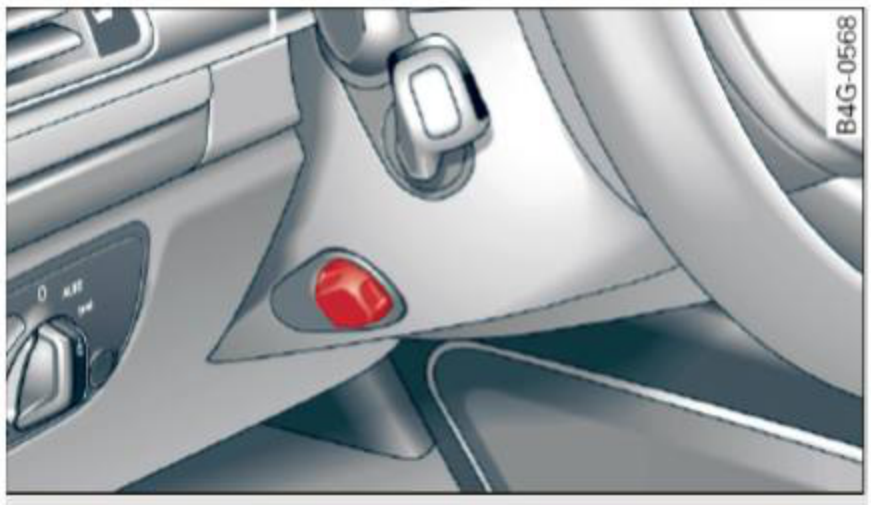


Fig. 75 Switch for adjusting the steering wheel position

- ▸ To adjust the height, press the switch up/down. The steering column will continue moving as long as you are pressing the switch.
- ▸ To move the steering wheel forward or back, press the switch forward/back. The steering column will continue moving as long as you are pressing the switch.

The steering wheel can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off.

In vehicles with memory function*, the steering column settings are stored together with the seat position.

WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.

– Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
– Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 130, fig. 140*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.
– If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 in (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.
– If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
– Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Easy seat entry

Applies to: vehicles with power steering wheel adjustment

Easy seat entry makes it easier to enter and exit the vehicle by adjusting the steering column automatically.

- ▸ In the Infotainment system, select the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** > **Easy seat entry** > **On**.

When easy seat entry is switched on, the steering column goes back up into the park position when ▶

the ignition is switched off. After entering the vehicle, the steering column returns to the stored position once the ignition is switched on.

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

The START ENGINE STOP button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.



Fig. 76 Center console: START ENGINE STOP button

Starting the engine

- ▸ Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever into the P or N position ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you would like to switch the ignition on without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button **without** pressing the brake pedal. Vehicles without the Start/Stop system*: the needle in the tachometer moves into the **READY** position.
- ▸ To switch the ignition off, press the button again. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine.

If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. Repeat the starting procedure.

Start/Stop system*

See the information in ⇨ *page 70, Start/Stop system*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

- Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
- If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

Stopping the engine

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to the P or N position.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 68, fig. 76*.

Steering lock[1)]

The steering locks when you turn the engine off using the START ENGINE STOP button and open the driver's door. The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

Emergency off function*

If it is absolutely necessary, the engine can also be turned off while driving in the R or D/S selector lever position at speeds below 6 mph (10 km/ ▶

1) This function is not available in all countries.

h). To stop the engine, press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button and also press the brake pedal.

WARNING

- Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You may need to use more force when braking or steering. Because you cannot brake and steer as you usually would, this could lead to accidents and serious injuries.
- Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
- For safety reasons, always park the vehicle with the selector lever in the P position. Otherwise, there is the risk that the vehicle could roll unintentionally.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run (even if the ignition is switched off) for the following reasons:

- The coolant temperature is increasing due to trapped heat.
- If the engine is warm and the engine compartment also heats up from strong sunlight.
- Applies to: vehicles with particulate filter: The emissions control system is heated through the regeneration process, even if the engine has not reached its operating temperature yet.

Messages

Turn off ignition before leaving car

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on.

Press brake pedal to start engine

This message appears if you do not press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Is key in the vehicle?

This indicator light turns on and this message appears if the ignition key was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the ignition key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch on the ignition or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P.

This message appears for safety reasons if the transmission is not in the P position when you switch the ignition off. Move the selector lever to the P position. Otherwise the vehicle is not protected from rolling and it cannot be locked.

Key is not recognized. Hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 70*.

Turn off ignition before leaving car. Battery is discharging

This message appears if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is switched on. Always switch off the ignition if you are leaving the vehicle. Also see ⇨ *page 71*.

Shift to P and turn off ignition before leaving car, otherwise vehicle can roll away

This message appears if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is switched on and the selector lever is not in the P position. Move the selector lever into the P position and switch the ignition off when you exit the vehicle. Otherwise the vehicle could roll. Also see ⇨ *page 71*.

4G8012721BD

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affected the key or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 77 Center console/remote control key: starting the engine if there is a malfunction

Requirement: the message **Key is not recognized. Hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual** must appear and the indicator light must turn on.

- ▸ Hold the remote control key in the location indicated as shown in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 77*.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.
- ▸ Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

You can view the message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start/Stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when the vehicle is stopped, such as at a traffic light. The ignition remains switched on during this stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

Applies to A7 Sportback: the Start/Stop system activates automatically once the ignition is switched on.

Applies to S7 Sportback: the last Start/Stop system setting is restored when the ignition is switched on.

Basic requirements for Start/Stop mode

- – The driver's door must be closed.
- – The driver's seat belt much be fastened.
- – The hood must be closed.
- – The vehicle must have driven faster than 2.5 mph (4 km/h) since the last time it stopped.
- – A trailer must not be hitched to the vehicle.

Note

Always switch the Start/Stop system off when driving through water ⇨ *page 70*.

Tips

The engine stops shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop [1].

Stopping/starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system



Fig. 78 Instrument cluster: engine switched off (stop phase)

- ▸ Brake the vehicle to a stop. The engine stops shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop or if the vehicle is stationary [1]. Keep your foot on ▸

[1] Market-specific

the brake pedal. The (A) indicator light appears in the information line at the bottom of the instrument cluster display. The needle in the tachometer also moves into the **READY** position [1].

▸ The engine starts again when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off.

Additional information

The engine stops in the P, N and D selector lever positions.

If you select the R position during a stop phase, the engine will start again.

Shift to P quickly to prevent the engine from starting unintentionally when shifting through R.

You can determine for yourself if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. As soon as you press the brake down harder, the engine will switch off.

Tips

– Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.
– The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The standard Start/Stop mode can be canceled for various system-related reasons.

Engine does not switch off

Before and during each stop phase, the system checks if certain conditions have been met. If the indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display, the engine will not be stopped, for example in the following situations:

– The engine has not reached the minimum required temperature for Start/Stop mode.
– The interior temperature selected by the climate control system has not been reached.
– The outside temperature is extremely high/low.
– The windshield is being defrosted.
– The parking system* is switched on.
– The vehicle battery charge level is too low.
– The steering wheel is turned at a sharp angle or is moving.
– After engaging the reverse gear.
– On sharp inclines.

Engine automatically restarts

The standard Start/Stop mode will be canceled during a stop phase in the following situations. The engine restarts without any action by the driver.

– The vehicle rolls, for example while on a slope.
– The interior temperature differs from the temperature selected in the A/C system.
– The windshield is being defrosted.
– The brake pedal is pressed several times in a row.
– The vehicle battery charge level is too low.
– Power consumption is high.

The engine can turn off again when the conditions for Start/Stop mode are met.

Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition will switch off **automatically** under the following conditions:

– The vehicle has already been driven.
– The Start/Stop system has stopped the engine.
– The driver's door is opened.
– The driver's safety belt is unbuckled.
– The brake pedal is not pressed.
– The vehicle is stationary.

In this case, the activated low beam is replaced by the parking light. The parking lights will switch off after approximately 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle. ▶

[1] Market-specific

If the Start/Stop system has not turned off the engine or if you have switched the Start/Stop system off manually, the ignition will not be automatically switched off and the engine will continue to run ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Tips

If you select the D or N selector lever position after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the engine to switch off again.

Manually switching the Start/Stop system off/on

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually.



Fig. 79 Center console: Start/Stop system button

- To switch the Start/Stop system off/on manually, press the Ⓐ OFF button. The LED in the button turns on when the system is switched off.

Tips

If you switch the system off during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Start-stop system deactivated: Please restart engine manually

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a stop phase. The Start/Stop system will **not** be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started with the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start-stop system: System fault! Currently unavailable

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Electromechanical parking brake



Fig. 80 Center console: parking brake

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *fig. 80*. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

Setting/manually releasing the parking brake

- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake. The LED in the switch turns on. The PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light also turns on in the instrument cluster display.
- To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The LED in the button and the indicator light in the display turn off. ▶

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed, the driver's safety belt must be latched and the parking brake must be set.

- To start driving and release the parking brake automatically, press the accelerator pedal as usual.

In addition to releasing the parking brake automatically, other convenience and safety functions are available when you start driving ⇨ *page 74, Starting to drive*.

Preventing the automatic parking brake release

The vehicle could begin rolling unintentionally, depending on the hill or if towing a trailer.

- To prevent the parking brake from releasing automatically, pull and hold the Ⓟ switch and press the accelerator pedal. The parking brake remains set and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
- You can release the Ⓟ switch again once you are sure that you are giving enough driving force to the wheels by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation, or if the standard brake operation malfunctions or is disabled.

- Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.
- As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking stops.

Pulling and holding the Ⓟ switch while driving the vehicle activates the emergency braking function. The vehicle is braked at all four wheels by activating the hydraulic brake system. The braking effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To reduce the risk of activating the emergency braking by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. Emergency braking stops as soon as the Ⓟ switch is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

Parking

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake.
- Place the selector lever in the P position.
- Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
- Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

⚠ WARNING

– Do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently if a gear is selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
– Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal brake pedal has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed. During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.
– If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake if it is released. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by placing the selector lever in the P position. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving your vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one should remain in the vehicle when it is locked - especially children. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, you can set the parking brake manually. The vehicle does not have to be ▶

held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a selector lever position is engaged. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake releases automatically and your vehicle starts to move ⇨ *page 74*.

Tips

– Occasional noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.
– If there is a power failure, the parking brake will not set if it is released, and it will not release if it is set ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Starting to drive

Various convenience and safety functions may be available when the vehicle begins driving, depending on vehicle equipment.

Starting on hills with the parking brake set

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the driver's safety belt must be fastened.

▸ To start driving comfortably when on a hill, set the parking brake and begin driving as usual. The braking force of the parking brake does not release automatically until the wheels build up enough driving force.

Starting on hills with hill hold assist

Hill hold assist makes it easier to start on hills.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

▸ To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be in an uphill direction of travel.

After releasing the brake pedal, the braking power is maintained for a brief moment ⇨ ⚠ to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting. During this time, you can easily begin to move your vehicle.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with hill hold assist

– If you do not begin driving immediately or the engine stalls after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The intelligent technology of hill hold assist cannot overcome the limitations imposed by natural physical laws. The increased comfort offered by hill hold assist should not cause you to take safety risks.
– Hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle in place on all hills (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
– To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

The automatic transmission is controlled electronically. The transmission shifts up or down automatically depending on which drive program is selected.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

The transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)** ⇨ *page 78*.

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic transmission

The S tronic is a dual-clutch transmission. Power is transferred using two clutches that work independently from one another. They replace the ▶

torque converter used in conventional automatic transmissions and allow the vehicle to accelerate without a noticeable interruption in traction.

Applies to: vehicles with a tiptronic transmission

Power is transferred using a torque converter.

Selector lever positions



Fig. 81 Instrument cluster: selector lever positions

The selector lever position that is engaged is shown in the instrument cluster display.

P - Park

This selector lever position prevents the vehicle from rolling. You can only shift into Park when the vehicle is *stationary* ⇨ ⚠.

To shift in and out of the P selector lever position, press the interlock button in the selector lever *while* pressing the brake pedal. This only works when the ignition is turned on.

R – Reverse

Only shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠.

To select the R selector lever position, press the interlock button *while* pressing the brake pedal at the same time. The back-up lights switch on in the R position if the ignition is switched on.

N - Neutral

The transmission is in idle in this position ⇨ ⚠.

D/S - Normal position for driving forward

In the D/S selector lever position, the transmission can be operated either in the normal D mode or in the S sport mode. To select the S sport mode, pull the selector lever back briefly. Pulling the lever back again will select the normal D mode. The instrument cluster display shows the selected driving mode.

In the **normal mode** D, the transmission automatically selects the suitable gear ratio. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

Select the **sport mode** S for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting is more noticeable when accelerating.

To move from selector lever position N to D, you must press the brake pedal and the vehicle must be traveling less than 1 mph (2 km/h) or be stationary ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.
- Never select R or P while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from “creeping”, you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except P) when the engine is running. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident.
- Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stopped if a gear is engaged. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.
- To decrease the risk of an accident, the selector lever must be in the P position and the parking brake must be set before opening the hood and working on a running engine. Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 193, Working in the engine compartment*.

Tips

- Drive select: sporty shifting characteristics can be selected using the **Dynamic** driving mode. S will appear in the instrument cluster display instead of D. ▶

– If you accidentally select N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting D/S.
– If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the P position. The emergency release can be used if this happens ⇨ *page 80*.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents you from selecting a gear accidentally, causing the vehicle to roll.

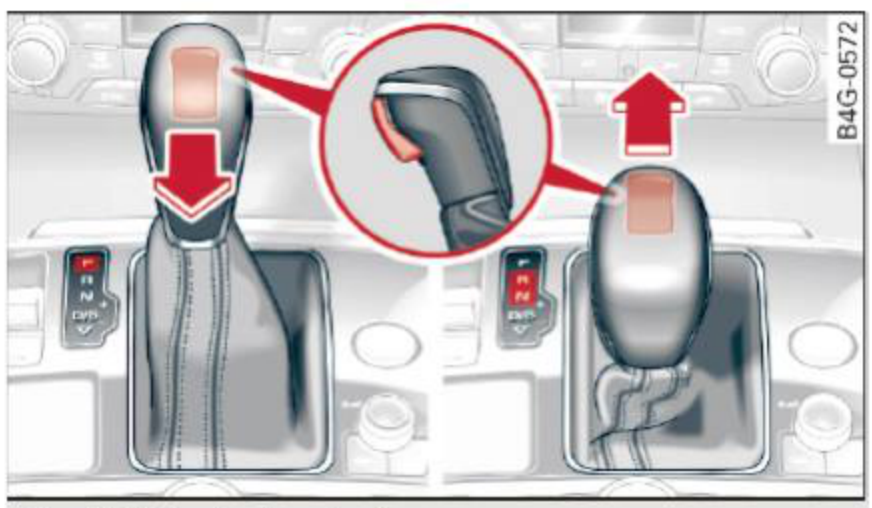


Fig. 82 Selector lever lock

To release the selector lever lock:

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal *while* pressing the interlock button.

Automatic shift lock (ASL)

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is switched on. The remove it from these positions, the driver must press the brake pedal and press the lock button at the same time. The following message appears in the instrument cluster display when the selector lever is in the P or N position to remind the driver:

Brake pedal must be applied to shift from P

The automatic shift lock only functions when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h). At higher speeds, the lock is automatically deactivated in the N position.

The selector lever is not locked when shifting quickly through N, for example from R to D. This makes it possible to free the vehicle when it is stuck by "rocking" it. The selector lever lock engages if the lever stays in the N position longer than 2 seconds when the brake pedal is not pressed.

Lock button

The interlock button in the selector lever handle prevents you from moving the selector lever inadvertently while in some selector lever positions. The positions that require the interlock button to be pressed are marked in color in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 82*.

Driving tips

Starting the engine

- ▸ The selector lever must be in the P or the N position.

Starting from a stop

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press and hold the lock button in the selector lever handle, select the desired selector lever position such as D/S and release the lock button.
- ▸ Wait a moment until the transmission shifts. You will notice a slight movement when the gear engages.
- ▸ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠.

Various convenience functions are available for starting on hills ⇨ *page 74*.

Stopping temporarily

- ▸ Keep the vehicle stationary using the braking pedal, for example at traffic lights.
- ▸ Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
- ▸ To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep hills ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ (!).
- ▸ The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal. ▶

Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the P position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll. The message **Vehicle may roll! Selector lever not in P** appears. A warning tone will also sound.

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the P selector lever position.

Under certain circumstances, such as driving in the mountains, it may be useful to switch temporarily to the manual shift program in order to manually adjust the gears to the driving conditions ⇨ *page 78*.

On inclines, activate the parking brake first and then move the selector lever to the P position ⇨ *page 72*. This prevents the locking mechanism from being loaded too heavily and will make it easier to move the selector lever out of the P position.

WARNING

- – The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.
- – Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear.
- – Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
- – Please note that a small amount of power is transmitted if the vehicle is stopped temporarily while in the D/S or R selector lever position. To reduce the risk of an accident, you must continue pressing firmly on the brake pedal while the vehicle is stopped so that it does not roll.
- – Never engage the R or P selector level positions while driving. It could cause a crash.
- – Before driving down a steep slope, reduce your speed and shift into a lower gear with "tiptronic".
- – Do not ride the brakes or press the brake pedal too often or too long when driving downhill. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.
- – If you must stop on an incline, always hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake or parking brake to prevent it from rolling back.
- – Never hold the vehicle on an incline with a slipping clutch. The clutch opens automatically when it becomes too hot from the overload. The ⚙ indicator light turns on and a message appears ⇨ *page 79* when the clutch is overloaded.

Note

- – When stopping on an incline, do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal while a driving gear is selected. This can cause the transmission to overheat and can damage it. Set the parking brake or press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- – Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped will damage the transmission because it is not lubricated.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is fastened.

Hill descent control

The hill descent control system assists the driver when driving down hills.

Hill descent control is activated when the selector lever is in the D or S position and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the hill. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed achieved at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. If may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brake pedal.

Hill descent control switches off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal. ▸

On vehicles with a cruise control system* ⇨ *page 84*, hill descent control is also activated when the speed is set.

WARNING

Hill descent control cannot overcome physical limitations, so it may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

Shifting manually (tiptronic mode)

The tiptronic mode allows the driver to shift the gears manually.

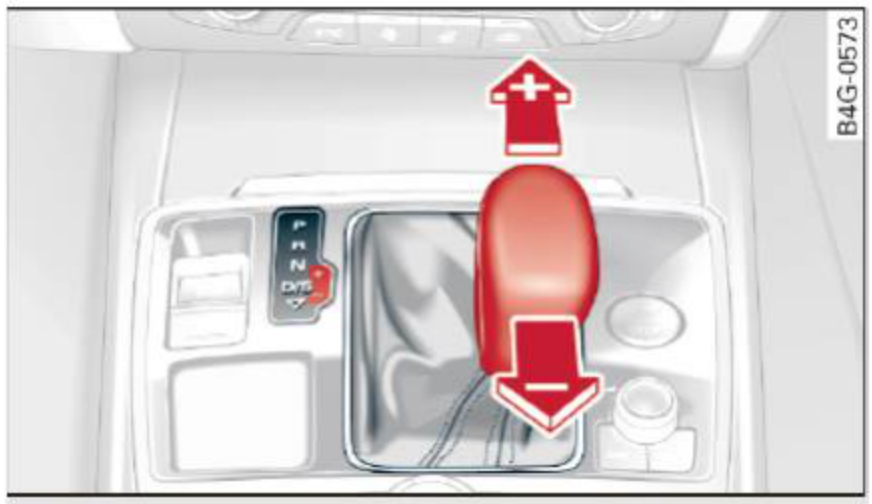


Fig. 83 Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever



Fig. 84 Steering wheel: shifting manually with the shift paddles*

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into tiptronic mode while stationary and while driving.

- ▸ To shift into tiptronic mode, push the selector lever from the D/S setting to the right. As soon as the transmission switches over, the **M** selector lever position will appear in the instrument cluster display.
- ▸ To shift up a gear, tap the selector lever forward ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 83*.
- ▸ To shift down a gear, tap the selector lever back ⊖.

Shifting with the shift paddles*

You can operate the shift paddles in the D/S or **M** selector lever positions.

- ▸ To shift up a gear, tap the shift paddle ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 84*.
- ▸ To shift down a gear, tap the ⊖ shift paddle.

The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

Applies to: RS models: when accelerating, the transmission does **not** automatically shift to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine RPM is reached. Shift to the next highest gear at the right time.

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed and engine RPM. It shifts up into the next higher gear once the maximum specified engine RPM is reached.

In tiptronic mode, the transmission does **not** automatically shift down into a lower gear. If you must accelerate, for example to pass a vehicle, you must shift manually.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

Overboost

Applies to: RS 7 Sportback performance

The maximum engine torque is temporarily increased in overboost. Overboost is activated when nearing full throttle in the S position and when the engine is at operating temperature. ▸

The bars in the boost pressure indicator are red ⇨ *page 23*.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when overboost is active.

Launch control program

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic

The launch control program provides the best possible acceleration when starting from a stop.

Requirement: the engine must be at operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned.

- ▸ Deactivate the Start/Stop system* ⇨ *page 72*. The LED in the button turns on.
- ▸ Switch the electronic stabilization control (ESC) sport mode on ⇨ *page 121*. The indicator light turns on.
- ▸ Pull the selector lever back out of the D/S position briefly to select the S position or select the DYNAMIC driving mode in drive select ⇨ *page 106*.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least one second.
- ▸ At the same time, press the gas pedal all the way down with your right foot until the engine reaches and stays at a high RPM level.
- ▸ Remove your foot from the brake pedal within five seconds ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
– Only use the Launch control program when road and traffic conditions allow it and other drivers will not be endangered or bothered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
– Please note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can break away when sport mode is switched on, especially when the road is slippery.
– Once the vehicle has started moving, press the OFF button briefly to turn the sport mode off.

Tips

– The transmission temperature may increase significantly after using the launch control program. If that happens, the program may not be available for a few minutes. It will be available again after a cool-down period.
– When accelerating using the launch control program, all vehicle parts are subject to heavy loads. This can lead to increased wear.

Transmission malfunction

Transmission: Press brake pedal and select gear again.

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Transmission overheating: Please drive conservatively.

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving with limited functionality

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. ▸

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic transmission

Transmission malfunction: No reverse gear. You can continue driving

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: Stop vehicle and shift to park.

Do not continue driving. Select the P selector lever position and see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Note

If the transmission has switched to emergency mode, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Selector lever emergency release

If the vehicle's power supply fails, the selector lever can be released in an emergency.



Fig. 85 Front center console: emergency release for the selector lever

- ▸ To reach the emergency release mechanism, remove the ashtray insert*.
- ▸ Loosen and remove the small cap in the ashtray mount ⇨ *fig. 85*.
- ▸ You now have access to a pin. Using a screwdriver or similar object, press the pin down and hold it in that position.

- ▸ Press the release button in the selector lever and move it into the N position.

Only move the selector lever out of the P position when the ignition is switched on. If the vehicle must be pushed or towed due to a power failure (for example, the vehicle battery is drained), the selector lever must first be moved to the N position using the emergency release mechanism.

WARNING

- Only activate the emergency release while on a level surface or a slight slope.
- Only move the selector lever out of the P position when the parking brake is set. If it is not functioning, secure the vehicle from rolling using the brake pedal or other suitable means, such as blocking a front and a rear wheel. An unsecured vehicle may roll away, which increases the risk of an accident.

Trailer towing

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your vehicle is primarily intended for transporting people and luggage. However, if you drive with a trailer, follow the technical requirements, the operation and driving tips, and the legal regulations.

Driving with a trailer affects the vehicle's fuel consumption, performance and wear. It also requires higher concentration from the driver.

WARNING

Do not transport any people in a trailer due to the risk of fatal injury.

Technical requirements

Certain requirements must be met when towing a trailer.

Trailer hitch

Only use a trailer hitch with a removable ball hitch mount and ball hitch. The trailer hitch must be permitted for the vehicle, the trailer and the permitted total weight of the trailer being pulled. Above all, it must be securely and safely attached to the vehicle trailer.

Never mount a trailer hitch on the bumper. The trailer hitch must be mounted in a way that does not impair the function of the bumper. Do not make any changes to the exhaust system and the brake system.

Check regularly if the trailer hitch is securely mounted. Always follow the instructions given by the trailer hitch manufacturer.

Trailer brakes

If the trailer has its own brake system, then follow the manufacturer specifications. However, the brake system on the trailer must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Engine cooling system

Driving with a trailer means a higher load on the engine and the cooling system. The cooling system must be designed for additional load and contain enough coolant ⇨ (!).

Note

Longer inclines cannot be driven without a suitable cooling system, especially if the outside temperatures are high. otherwise, this increases the risk of engine damage.

Operating instructions

Several things must be noted when towing a trailer.

Towing capacity

Your vehicle can only be operated with class 1 or class 2 trailers.

Load distribution

Poor cargo load and distribution can negatively impact vehicle handling.

- Store objects preferably in the vehicle luggage compartment. The vehicle should always carry the heaviest possible load and the trailer should have the lightest possible load.
- Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heavy objects are as close to the axle as possible.
- Secure objects from sliding out of place.
- Utilize the maximum permitted tongue weight if possible.

Tires

Set the tire pressure on your vehicle for a “full load”; see the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 215*. If necessary, also adjust the tire pressure on the trailer according to the manufacturer's recommendation.

Winter tires should be mounted on the vehicle and on the trailer during winter temperatures.

Outside mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard exterior mirrors, then you ▶

must attach additional exterior mirrors. Adjust them so you have a sufficient visibility behind you.

Exterior lighting

Follow the legal regulations regarding the lighting equipment on your trailer. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Before starting to drive, check all lighting equipment on the hitched trailer.

The headlight range control adjusts automatically to the light range of the headlights.

Safety chains

Make sure the safety chains are correctly applied when pulling a trailer. The chains should hang enough so that the trailer can drive around curves. However, they must not touch the ground.

Air suspension

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

The air suspension must be at the standard vehicle height before you set the tongue weight on the trailer and hitch the trailer ⇨ ⓘ, ⇨ *page 107, Raising/lowering the vehicle*.

For vehicles with a factory-installed trailer hitch, the air suspension trailer mode will automatically switch on if you connect the trailer cable to the socket.

For vehicles with a retrofitted trailer hitch, you must switch on the air suspension trailer mode manually. Select in the Infotainment system: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Air suspension: trailer** > **On**. Switch it off again after towing a trailer.

You can also switch off trailer mode manually while driving, for example, when using a bicycle rack system.

If you have to drive through difficult road conditions, you can raise the vehicle again after hitching the trailer or after adjusting the tongue weight.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

- Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.
- Set the air suspension to the standard vehicle height, otherwise the applicable tongue weight no longer applies to your vehicle.

Tips

- Use chocks when parking on inclines if the trailer is loaded.
- We recommend also having the vehicle inspected between the inspection intervals if you are towing a trailer frequently.
- Avoid driving with a trailer during the vehicle break-in period.

Driving with a trailer

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution.

Speed

Adhere to the legal speed limits. Follow the legal regulations specific to the country.

As the speed increases, the driving stability of the trailer decreases. Therefore you should not exceed the maximum legal speed limit when there are unfavorable road, weather and/or wind conditions. This especially applies when driving downhill.

You must always reduce your speed as soon as you notice even the slightest swinging motion of the trailer. Never try to “straighten out” the trailer by accelerating.

The weight distribution is very poor if the vehicle is empty and the trailer is loaded. However if you must drive under these circumstances, then drive especially slowly.

Brakes

Brake in a timely manner. Downshift before driving downhill so that the engine can assist with braking ⇨ ⚠.

When using a trailer with overrun brakes, first brake gently then quickly. This reduces the risk of jerking while braking if the trailer wheels lock up. ▶

Engine coolant temperature

Pay attention specifically to the coolant temperature display when there are high outside temperatures, and when driving on long inclines ⇨ *page 9*. Shift to a higher gear in a timely manner.

WARNING

Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.

Assistance systems

Speed warning system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps you to stay under a specified maximum speed.

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. A warning tone will sound as soon as your speed exceeds the stored value slightly.

The MPH (USA models) / km/h (Canada models) indicator light and a message appear in the instrument cluster display at the same time. The MPH / km/h indicator light and the message turn off if the speed falls back below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Setting the warning threshold

The warning threshold is set in the Infotainment system.

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning**.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Cruise control system

Switching on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 20 mph (30 km/h).

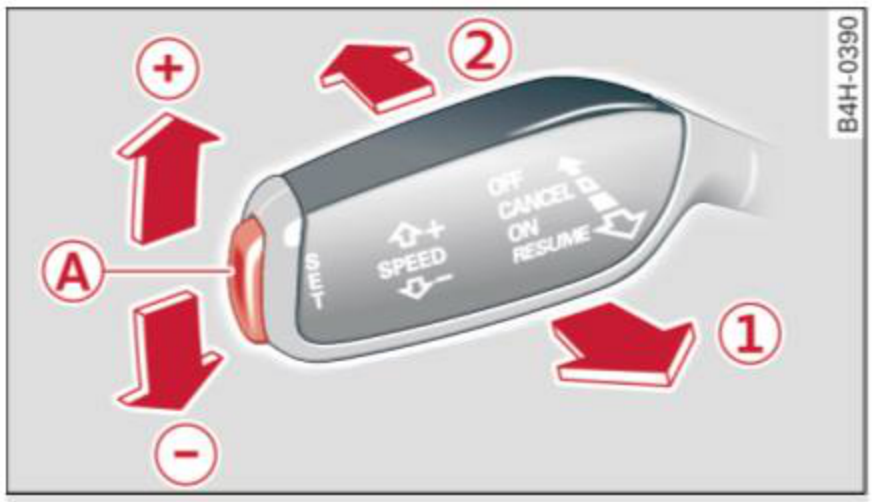


Fig. 86 Operating lever: cruise control system

- To switch the cruise control on, pull the lever into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 86*.
- Drive at the speed to be maintained.
- To store the speed, press the button (A).

The stored speed and the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light are displayed in the instrument cluster.

This information is also shown briefly in the head-up display*.

The speed is maintained by modifying engine power or through an active brake intervention.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control system is in operation. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or in construction zones. ▶

– Please note that unconsciously "resting" your foot on the accelerator pedal prevents the cruise control from braking. This is because pressing the accelerator pedal overrides the cruise control system.
– If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the braking function in the system may be switched off. The rest of the cruise control system functions remain active as long as the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light is on.

Tips

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are applied automatically.

Changing speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To increase or decrease the speed in increments, tap the lever toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 84, fig. 86*.
- To increase or decrease the speed quickly, hold the lever in the (+)/(-) direction until the desired speed is displayed.

You can also press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, for example if you want to pass someone. The speed you set earlier will resume as soon as you release the accelerator pedal.

However, if you exceed your saved speed by 5 mph (10 km/h) for longer than 6 minutes, the cruise control system turns off temporarily.

The green CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light in the speedometer turns off and the stored speed is maintained.

Preselecting the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can pre-select your desired speed when the vehicle is stationary.

- Switch the ignition on.
- Pull the lever into position (1) ⇨ *page 84, fig. 86*.
- To increase or decrease the speed, tap the lever toward (+)/(-).
- To store the speed displayed, release the lever.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once on the highway, activate the cruise control by pulling the lever toward (1).

Switching off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Deactivating temporarily

- Press the brake pedal, or
- Press the lever into position (2) (not clicked into place) ⇨ *page 84, fig. 86*, or
- Drive for longer than 5 minutes faster than 5 mph (10 km/h) above the stored speed.

Switching off completely

- Press the lever into position (2) (clicked into place), or
- Switch the ignition off.

The speed you stored will be maintained if the cruise control has been switched off temporarily. To resume the stored speed, release the brake pedal and pull the lever to position (1).

Switching the ignition off will erase the stored speed.

WARNING

You should only resume the stored speed if it is not too high for existing traffic conditions. Otherwise you can increase the risk of an accident.

Lap timer

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can record and evaluate lap times with the lap timer ⇨ *page 86, fig. 87*. The time is measured in minutes, seconds and 1/10 seconds. The hours are also shown when the lap time exceeds 60 minutes. The maximum individual measurement is 99 hours. A maximum of 50 laps can be recorded. ▶

WARNING

Your focus should always be on driving your vehicle safely. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

Tips

You can retrieve information from the trip computer while the lap timer stopwatch is running.

Opening the lap timer and recording times

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer



Fig. 87 Display: lap timer

Opening the lap timer

- Turn the menu thumbwheel on the steering wheel until **Lap timer** appears in the instrument cluster display.

Timing laps

- To start timing, press the thumbwheel.
- To stop timing for this round, press the thumbwheel again. This starts timing the next lap at the same time. The last recorded time will move up one line. The lap number is displayed in front of the time measurement.

Displaying intermediate time and pausing timing

- To display a split time, press the thumbwheel. The timing continues to run in the background.
- To interrupt the timing, for example to insert a pause, press the thumbwheel.
- To resume timing, press the thumbwheel again.

If timing is paused, you can continue it later even if you switch the ignition off.

Evaluating, resuming or resetting timing

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can evaluate the fastest, slowest and average lap times.



Fig. 88 Display: evaluating a recorded time

- To evaluate a recorded time (view the statistics), press the thumbwheel. The number of laps driven, the fastest lap "+", the slowest lap "-", and the average lap time "Ø" appear in the display.
- To continue timing for additional laps, press the thumbwheel.
- To reset the timing to zero, press the thumbwheel again. The lap timer switches off.

Tips

- Saved lap times cannot be individually deleted from the total results.
- The saved lap timer values will remain after switching the ignition off.

Audi adaptive cruise control

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

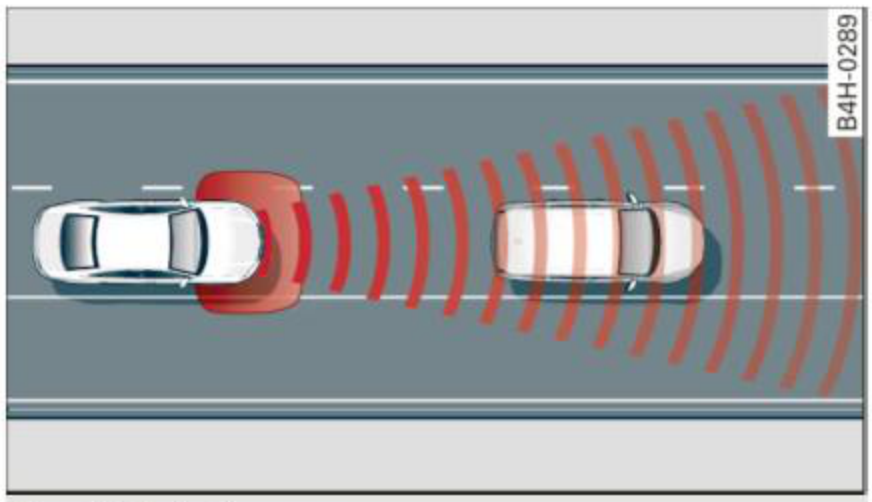


Fig. 89 Detection range

The adaptive cruise control system is a combination of speed and distance regulation. It assists the driver by both regulating the speed and maintaining a distance to the vehicle driving ahead, within the limits of the system. If the system detects and object ahead, adaptive cruise control can brake and accelerate your vehicle. This makes driving more comfortable both on long stretches of highway and in stop-and-go traffic.

What can adaptive cruise control do?

The adaptive cruise control system uses video, radar and ultrasound. Objects driving ahead can be recognized up to 650 feet (200 m) away.

On open roads with no traffic, it functions like a cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching an object ahead, the adaptive cruise control system automatically brakes to match that object's speed and then maintains the stored distance. As soon as the system does not detect an object ahead, adaptive cruise control accelerates up to the stored speed.

In stop-and-go traffic, adaptive cruise control can brake until the vehicle is stationary and then begin driving again under certain conditions ⇨ *page 90*.

Audi braking guard can warn you about an impending collision and initiate braking maneuvers ⇨ *page 92*.

Which functions can be controlled?

When you switch adaptive cruise control on, you can set the current speed as the "control speed" ⇨ *page 89, Switching on/off*.

When driving, you can stop cruise control ⇨ *page 91* or change the speed ⇨ *page 90* at any time.

You can also set the distance to the object moving ahead and set the driving mode of the adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 91*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 90 Front of the vehicle: sensors and video camera

The areas that contain the radar and ultrasonic sensors and the video camera ⇨ *fig. 90* must not be covered by stickers, deposits or other objects because this can interfere with the function of the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 228*. The same applies for any modifications made in the front area.

The function of the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard is limited under some conditions.

- Objects can only be detected when they are within the sensor range ⇨ *page 87, fig. 89*.
- The system has a limited ability to detect objects that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle or moving into your lane.
- Objects that are difficult to detect such as motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance or an overhanging load are detected late or not detected at all.
- When driving through curves ⇨ *page 89*. ▶

4G8012721BD

– With stationary objects ⇨ *page 89*.

WARNING

Always pay attention to traffic when adaptive cruise control is switched on and braking guard is active. As the driver, you are still responsible for starting and for maintaining speed and distance to other objects. Braking guard is used to assist you. The driver must always take action to avoid a collision. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– For safety reasons, do not use adaptive cruise control when driving on roads with many curves, when the road surface is in poor condition and/or in bad weather (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning). Using the system under these conditions increases the risk of an accident.
– Switch adaptive cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, on expressway exits or in construction zones. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.
– The adaptive cruise control system will not brake by itself if you put your foot on the accelerator pedal. Doing so can override the speed and distance regulation.
– When approaching stationary objects such as stopped traffic, adaptive cruise control will not respond and braking guard will have limited function.
– The adaptive cruise control system and braking guard do not react to people, animals, objects crossing the road or oncoming objects.
– The function of the radar sensors can be affected by reflective objects such as guard rails, the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain or ice.

WARNING

– Improper use of adaptive cruise control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.
– Never let the comfort and convenience that adaptive cruise control and braking guard offer distract you from the need to be alert to traffic conditions and the need to remain in full control of your vehicle at all times,
– Always remember that the adaptive cruise control and braking guard have limits – they will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle. If registered by the radar sensors, vehicles or obstacles that are not moving can trigger a collision warning and if confirmed by the video camera, an acute collision warning.
– Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The adaptive cruise control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a sudden or emergency stop under these conditions.
– To prevent unintended operation, always switch ACC off when it is not being used.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. That could affect the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 258*.

In curves

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

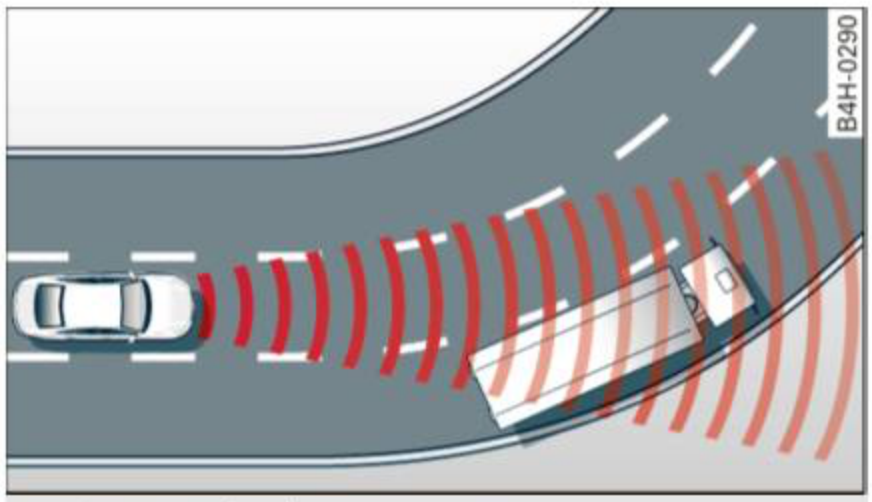


Fig. 91 Example: driving into a curve

When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 91* and out of a curve, the adaptive cruise control may react to an object in the neighboring lane and apply the brakes. You can prevent that by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.

Stationary objects

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

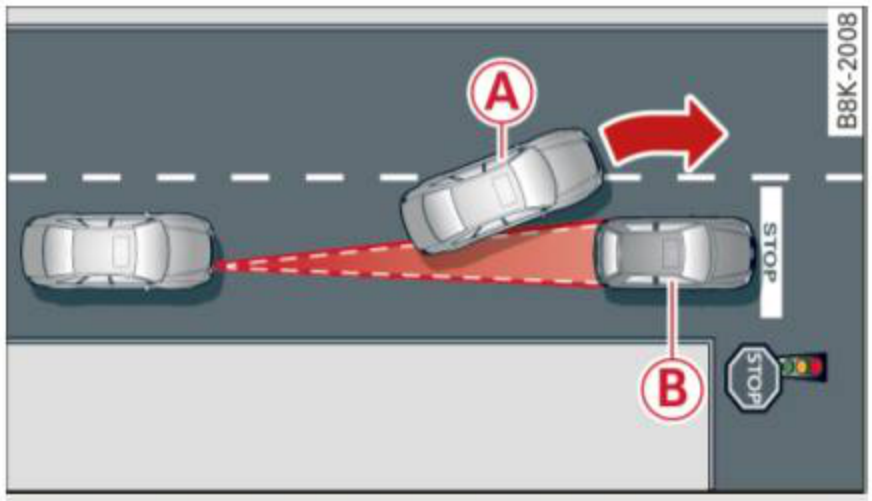


Fig. 92 Example: object changing lanes and stationary object

The adaptive cruise control system only reacts to objects that are moving or that the system has already detected as moving. For example, it can react when a vehicle that has already been detected (A) turns or changes lanes, but adaptive cruise control does not react to a stationary vehicle (B).

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

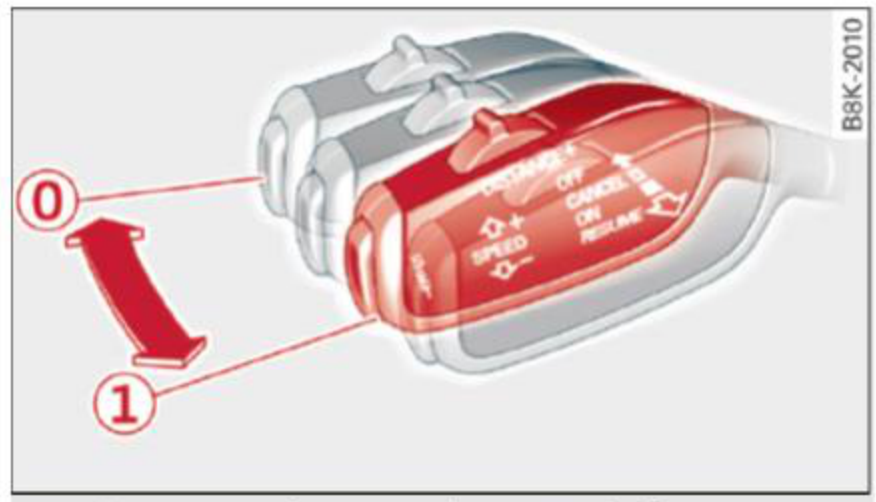


Fig. 93 Operating lever: switching on and off



Fig. 94 Instrument cluster: adaptive cruise control

You can set any speed between 20 mph (30 km/h) and 95 mph (150 km/h).

Indicator lights and messages in the instrument cluster display inform you about the current situation and setting.

An additional indicator appears in the head-up display*.

Switching adaptive cruise control on

- ▸ Pull the lever toward you into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 93*. **ACC: standby** appears in the display.

Storing the speed and activating regulation

- ▸ To store the current speed, press the SET button ⇨ *fig. 93*. The stored speed is shown in the speedometer in the LED line (A) and appears briefly in the information line (D) ⇨ *fig. 94*.
- ▸ To activate the regulation while stationary, also press the brake pedal.

Switching adaptive cruise control off

- ▸ Push the lever away from you into position (0) until it clicks into place. The message **ACC: off** appears.

Ⓑ Indicator lights

- Adaptive cruise control is switched on. No objects are detected ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

- An object ahead was detected. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed and distance to the object ahead and accelerates/brakes automatically.

- Adaptive cruise control is switched on. An object ahead was detected. Your vehicle remains stopped and will not start driving automatically.

- The automatic braking is not enough to maintain a sufficient distance to an object ahead. You must intervene ⇨ *page 92, Request for driver intervention*.

Ⓒ Instrument cluster display

If adaptive cruise control is not shown in the instrument cluster display, you can call it up using the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 20*.

Based on the graphics in the display, you can determine if the system is maintaining a distance to the object ahead and what that distance is.

No vehicle - no object was detected ahead.

White vehicle - an object was detected ahead.

Red vehicle - request for driver intervention ⇨ *page 92*.

Both **arrows** on the **scale** Ⓒ indicate the distance to the object ahead. No arrow appears when the vehicle is on an open road and there is no object ahead. If an object is detected ahead, the arrow moves on the scale.

The green zone on the scale indicates the store distance. For information on changing the distance, refer to ⇨ *page 91*. If the distance selected is exceeded or not reached, the arrow moves into the red zone on the scale.

WARNING

If you press the SET button when driving at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h), the vehicle accelerates automatically up to 20 mph (30 km/h), which is the minimum speed that can be set.

Tips

- If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise control system off, the set speed is erased for safety reasons.
- The electronic stabilization control (ESC) and the anti-slip-regulation (ASR) are automatically switched on when the adaptive cruise control is switched on.

Changing the speed

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 95 Operating lever: changing the speed

- To increase or reduce the speed in increments, **tap** the lever up or down.
- To increase or decrease the speed quickly, **hold** the lever up or down until the red LED Ⓐ reaches the desired speed ⇨ *page 89, fig. 94*.

After each change, the new stored speed appears briefly in the information line ⇨ *page 89, fig. 94* Ⓓ.

Driving in stop-and-go traffic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control system also assists you in stop-and-go traffic.

Stopping automatically

If an object ahead stops, your vehicle will brake and stay at a stop, within the limits of the system. The Start/Stop system* can be used as usual. ▶

Driving manually

- ▸ Tap the accelerator pedal, or
- ▸ pull the lever toward you into position (2).

Tips

If an obstacle is detected when your vehicle starts moving, the driver intervention request appears ⇨ *page 92*. Your vehicle will drive more slowly when starting. This may also happen in some situations when there is no apparent obstacle.

Interrupting cruise control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

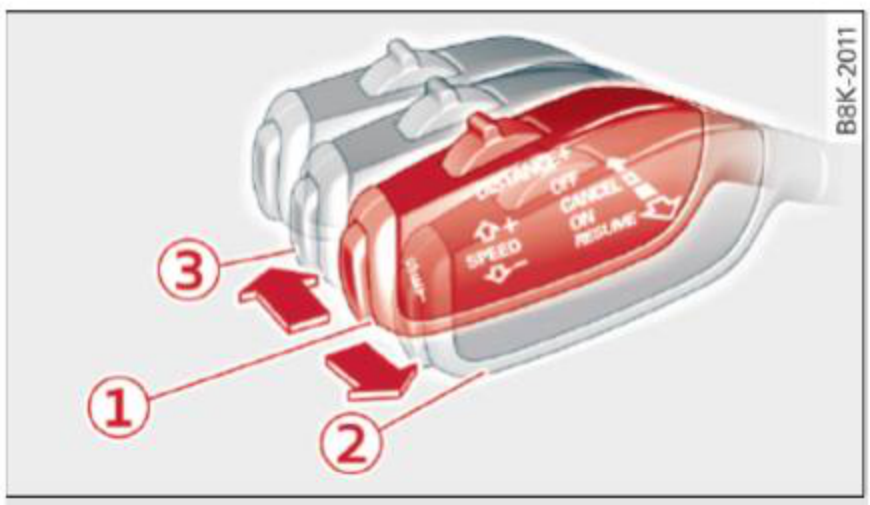


Fig. 96 Selector lever

Requirement: adaptive cruise control must be switched on.

Overriding cruise control

- ▸ To accelerate manually, pull the lever toward you into position (2) and hold it there. The message **ACC: override** appears. Or
- ▸ Press the accelerator pedal.
- ▸ To resume cruise control, release the lever or take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Canceling cruise control while driving

- ▸ Move the lever into position (3). The message **ACC: standby** appears. Or
- ▸ Press the brake pedal.
- ▸ To resume the stored speed, move the lever into position (2).

Canceling cruise control when stopped

- ▸ Push the lever away from you into position (3). The message **ACC: standby** appears.
- ▸ To resume cruise control, press the brake pedal and pull the lever toward you into position (2).

WARNING

It is dangerous to activate cruise control and resume the stored speed when the current road, traffic or weather conditions do not permit this. This increases the risk of an accident.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

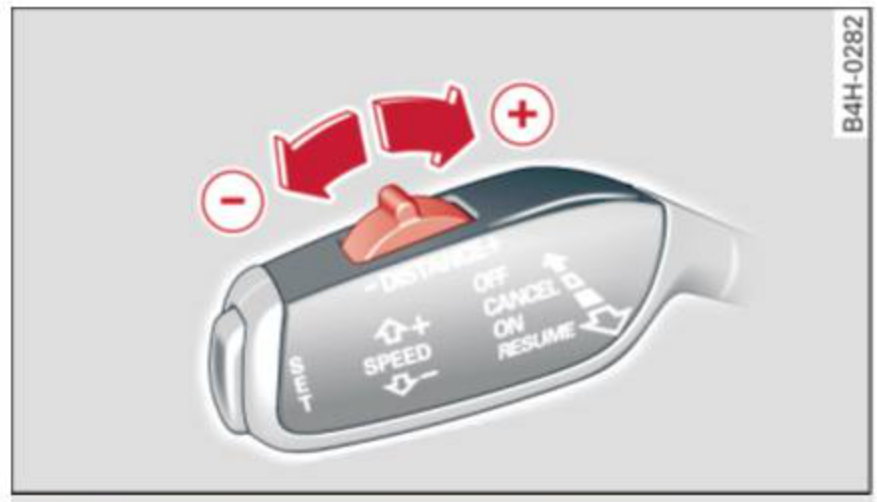


Fig. 97 Operating lever: setting the distance

- ▸ Tap the switch to display the current set distance ⇨ *fig. 97*.
- ▸ To increase or reduce the distance in increments, tap the switch again to the right or left. The distance between the two vehicles will change in the instrument cluster display.

When approaching an object ahead, the adaptive cruise control system brakes to match that speed and then adjusts to the set distance. If the object ahead accelerates, adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the stored speed.

The higher the speed, the greater the distance in meters ⇨ ⚠. The **Distance 3** setting is recommended. That is equal to the general recommendation of "half the speed shown on the speedometer".

The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and the way the object ahead is driving, the actual distance may be more or less than these target distances.

The various symbols for the time increments appears briefly in the information line (D) ⇨ *page 89, fig. 94* when you change the settings. ▶

Distance 1: this setting corresponds to a distance of 92 ft (28 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), for example (time between: 1 second).

Distance 2: this setting corresponds to a distance of 118 ft (36 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), for example (time between: 1.3 seconds).

Distance 3: this setting corresponds to a distance of 164 ft (50 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), for example (time between: 1.8 seconds).

Distance 4: This setting corresponds to a distance of 210 ft (64 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), (time distance of 2.3 seconds).

WARNING

Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury.

- Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention to traffic.
- Always obey applicable traffic laws, use good judgment, and select a safe following distance for the traffic, road and weather conditions.

Tips

- **Distance 3** is set automatically each time you switch the ignition on.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

▸ Select the desired driving mode in drive select ⇨ *page 105*.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Request for driver intervention

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 98 Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

In certain situations, the system will request you to take action:

- If the braking from the adaptive cruise control system is not enough to maintain enough distance to the object ahead.

The danger is indicated by the indicator light ⇨ *fig. 98*. An audio signal will also sound.

- Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle down.

Audi braking guard

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 99 Instrument cluster: approach warning

The braking guard uses radar sensors and a video camera. It also functions within the limits of the system when adaptive cruise control is switched off. ▸

What can the braking guard do?

When detected in time, the system can assess dangerous situations where an object ahead brakes suddenly or if your own vehicle is traveling at a high speed and approaching an object that is moving more slowly. The braking guard does not react if it cannot detect the situation.

The system advises you of various dangerous situations:

– The **distance warning** occurs if you drive too closely to the object ahead for a long period of time. If the object ahead brakes strongly, you would not be able to avoid a collision. The indicator light appears as an indication for this.
– The **approach warning** occurs when an object ahead is traveling more slowly or brakes strongly. When this warning occurs, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking strongly. The danger is indicated by the indicator light ⇨ *fig. 99*. An audio signal will also sound.

If you do not react early enough or at all to a dangerous situation, the braking guard supports you with a braking intervention.

– If a collision is imminent, the system will first provide an **acute warning** by braking sharply.
– If you do not react to the acute warning, the braking guard can increase the braking force within the limits of the system [1]. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.
– The system can initiate complete deceleration shortly before a collision [1]. Full deceleration at high speeds occurs only in vehicles with adaptive cruise control and side assist (pre sense plus).
– If the braking guard determines that you are not braking strongly enough when there is an impending collision, it can increase the braking force.
– The pre sense functions also engage when there is an impending collision ⇨ *page 95*.

Which functions can be controlled?

You can switch the braking guard and the distance/approach warning on or off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 94, Settings in the Infotainment system*.

WARNING

Lack of attention can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries. The braking guard is an assist system and cannot prevent a collision by itself. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– Always pay close attention to traffic, even when the braking guard is switched on. Be ready to intervene and be ready to take complete control whenever necessary. Always keep the safe and legal distance between your vehicle and vehicles up ahead.
– Braking guard works within limits and will not respond outside the system limits, for example when approaching a stopped vehicle or stationary obstacle (end of a traffic jam or vehicle that has broken down in traffic).
– Always remember that the radar sensor for the braking guard works only within defined detection and range limits that may prevent the proper detection of other vehicles.
– The radar sensor's function and range can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. Moving vehicles up ahead may not be promptly detected or may not be detected at all.
– Reflective surfaces including crash barriers or tunnel entrances may impair the function of the radar sensor.

Tips

– You can cancel the braking with increasing force that is initiated by the system by braking yourself, by accelerating noticeably or by swerving.
– Keep in mind that braking guard can brake unexpectedly. Always secure any cargo or ▶

[1] This is not available in some countries.

objects that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.

Settings in the Infotainment system

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi braking guard**.

System - switch the braking guard **On**/**Off**. When you switch the ignition on, the message **Braking guard: Off** appears if the system is switched off.

Early warning - the distance and approach warnings in the display can be switched **On**/**Off**.

Tips

– Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.
– If you restrict or switch off the ESC, the braking guard also switches itself off ⇨ *page 121*.
– Switch braking guard off when you are loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship or other type of transportation. This can prevent undesired warnings from the braking guard system.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Braking guard: Off

This message appears if the system is switched off through the Infotainment system. Otherwise, if the system is turned off, the information appears every time shortly after the start of the trip.

The message also appears if the system is not available due to a malfunction or if the ESC is switched off ⇨ *page 121*. If this is the case, the system will not provide warnings about a possible collision.

Braking guard: engaged

This message appears if a sharp brake pressure was applied due to an acute warning.

ACC: Unavailable!

ACC and Audi braking guard: Unavailable

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect objects correctly and is switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. The pre sense functions may also be affected. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

ACC: Currently unavailable. No sensor vision

ACC and Audi braking guard: Currently unavailable. No sensor vision

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensors ⇨ *page 87, fig. 90*.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Gradient too steep

The road exceeds the maximum possible angle for safe adaptive cruise control operation. Adaptive cruise control is switched off.

ACC: Only available in D, S or M

Select the D/S or M selector lever position.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Parking brake applied

The adaptive cruise control system switches off automatically if the parking brake is set.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Stability control (ESC) input.

This message appears if the electronic stabilization control (ESC) is taking action to stabilize the vehicle. In this case, adaptive cruise control switches off automatically.

ACC off: Manual control!

This message appears when adaptive cruise control cannot set the parking brake. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

• • •

Three white dots appear if a setting cannot be selected with the operating lever. For example, this happens if adaptive cruise control cannot start driving automatically in stop-and-go traffic ▶

because the driver has not fastened their safety belt.

Door open

The adaptive cruise control system cannot switch on when a door is open.

Stationary object ahead

This message appears if you would like to switch adaptive cruise control on and there is a stationary object or obstacle directly ahead of your vehicle.

Audi pre sense

Preventative passenger protection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Pre sense can initiate steps to protect vehicle occupants in certain dangerous situations. The functions described are available depending on vehicle equipment:

Pre sense basic*

The following functions can be triggered in certain driving situations:

– Tensioning of the safety belts (for example, during heavy braking): the front safety belts have reversible belt tensioners. If a collision does not occur, the safety belts loosen slightly and are ready to trigger again.
– Closing the windows and the sunroof* (for example, when over- or understeering): the windows and the sunroof* close until there is only a small gap open.

The function of the pre sense basic is activated at a speed of 20 mph (30 km/h) or higher.

Drive select: the deployment time is adapted in **Dynamic** mode.

Pre sense front (vehicles with adaptive cruise control*)

Pre sense front contains the functions of pre sense basic. In addition, the likelihood of a rear-end collision with the vehicle ahead is also calculated, within the limits of the system. If the risk of a collision is detected, the following functions can trigger:

– Braking guard ⇨ *page 92*
– Tensioning of the safety belts
– Closing the windows and the sunroof*

Pre sense rear (vehicles with side assist*)

Pre sense rear contains the functions of pre sense basic. In addition, the likelihood of a rear-end collision from the vehicle behind is also calculated, within the limits of the system. If the risk of a collision is detected, the following functions can trigger:

– Tensioning of the safety belts
– Closing the windows and the sunroof*

Pre sense plus*

Pre sense plus contains the functions of pre sense front and pre sense rear.

Error message

Audi pre sense: Unavailable

Preventative passenger protection is not available. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Pre sense cannot overcome natural physical laws. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.

– The system can deploy incorrectly.
– Please note that the sensors do not always detect all objects. This increases the risk of a collision.
– Pre sense does not react to people or animals or objects that are crossing the vehicle's path or are difficult to detect ⇨ *page 87*.
– Reflective objects such as guard rails or the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain and ice can affect the function of the radar sensors and the system's ability to detect a collision risk. ▶

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. Pre sense can be impaired by this. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– Certain pre sense front functions switch off when sport mode is switched off or when driving in reverse.
– The pre sense functions may not be available if there is a malfunction in the ESC system or the airbag control module.
– The pre sense front/plus functions are not available if there is a malfunction in the adaptive cruise control* system ⇨ *page 94*.
– The pre sense rear/plus functions are not available if there is a malfunction in the side assist* system ⇨ *page 94*.

Audi active lane assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

Active lane assist detects lane marker lines within the limits of the system using a camera in the windshield. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system will warn you with corrective steering. You can override this steering at any time. If you pass over a line, the steering wheel will vibrate lightly. In order for this warning vibration to occur, it must first be switched on in the Infotainment system. Active lane assist is ready for operation when the lane marker line is detected on at least one side of the vehicle.

The system is designed for driving on expressways and highways and therefore only activates at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

If you activate a turn signal when active lane assist is ready and it classifies a lane change as critical because of vehicles traveling alongside you or approaching you, there will be noticeable corrective steering shortly before you leave the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

Applies to: vehicles without side assist

The system will not warn you before crossing a lane marker line if you have activated the turn signal. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise control

The corrective steering is targeted based on the driving situation. In addition to the lane marker lines, the system can also take into account other objects such as guard rails. If they are detected in close proximity to the vehicle, active lane assist helps prevent the vehicle from driving too close to them. There is also passing assistance. The system does not provide any corrective steering if it detects that you are passing another vehicle.

WARNING

– The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
– The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane, but it does not drive by itself. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.
– Corrective steering may not occur in certain situations, such as during heavy braking.
– There may be cases where the camera does not recognize all lane marker lines. Corrective steering can only take place on the side of the vehicle where lane marker lines are detected.
– Other road structures or objects could possibly be identified unintentionally as lane marker lines. As a result, corrective steering may be unexpected or may not occur.
– The camera view can be restricted, for example by vehicles driving ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray or light shining into the camera. This can result in active lane assist not detecting the lane marker lines or detecting them incorrectly.

▶

– Under certain conditions such as ruts in the road, a banked roadway or crosswinds, the corrective steering alone may not be enough to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
– For safety reasons, active lane assist must not be used when there are poor road and/or weather conditions such as slippery roads, fog, gravel, heavy rain, snow and the potential for hydroplaning. Using active lane assist under these conditions may increase the risk of a crash.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

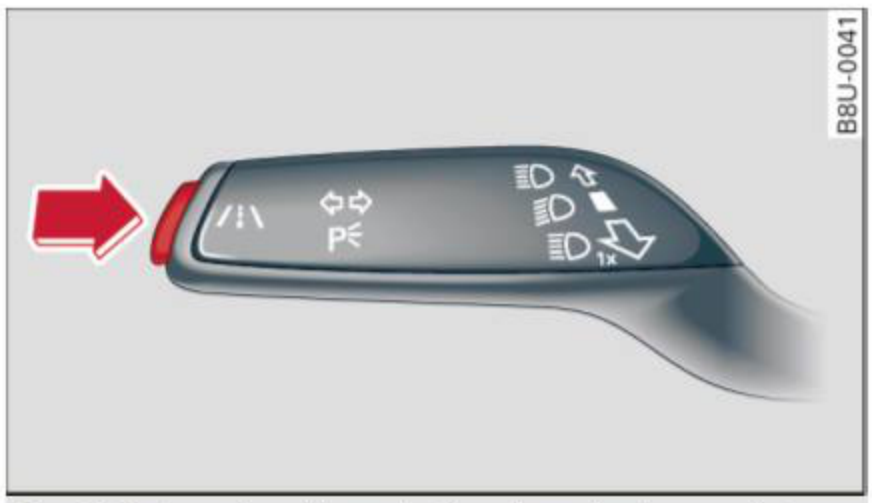


Fig. 100 Turn signal lever: button for active lane assist



Fig. 101 Windshield: camera window for active lane assist

▸ Press the button to switch the system on and off ⇨ *fig. 100*. The or indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on or off.

Indicator lights

Ready: the indicator light turns on when the system is ready for use. The system can now be operated.

Not ready: the indicator light turns on if the system is switched on but is inoperable. This may be due to the following reasons:

– There is no lane marker line.
– The relevant lane marker lines are not detected (for example, markings in a construction zone or because they are obstructed by snow, dirt, water or lighting).
– The vehicle speed is below the activation speed of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The curve is too narrow.
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.

Tips

Make sure the camera's field of view ⇨ *fig. 101* is not obstructed by stickers or anything else. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 228*.

View in instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

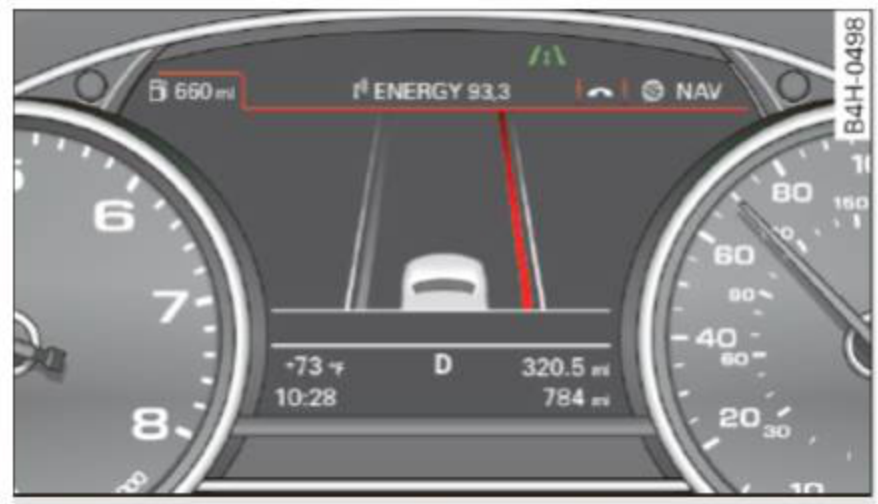


Fig. 102 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on and providing warnings



Fig. 103 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on but not ready to provide warnings

You can call up the active lane assist display using the buttons in the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 20*. ▶

An additional indicator appears in the head-up display*.

White line(s)	Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings.
Red line(s) (left or right)	Active lane assist warns you before leaving a lane ⇨ *fig. 102*. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates lightly.
Gray line(s)	Active lane assist is activated, but not ready to give warning ⇨ *fig. 103*.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

If the active lane assist switches off automatically, the indicator light in the display turns off and one of the following messages appears:

Audi active lane assist: Currently unavailable. No camera view

This message appears if the camera is unable to detect the lines. This could happen if:

– The camera field of view ⇨ *page 97, fig. 101* is dirty or covered in ice. Clean this area on the windshield.
– The camera field of view is fogged over. Wait until the fog has cleared before switching the active lane assist on again.
– The system has been unable to detect the lanes for an extended period of time due to road conditions. Switch active lane assist back on when the lines are more visible.

Audi active lane assist: Currently unavailable

There is a temporary active lane assist malfunction. Try switching the active lane assist on again later.

Audi active lane assist: System fault!

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi active lane assist: Please take over steering

This message appears if you are not steering by yourself. If this is the case, active lane assist does not switch off, but it is “not ready” to provide a warning. The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane. However, you are responsible for driving the vehicle and must steer it yourself.

WARNING

Note that messages may be delayed or not displayed on vehicles with accessories mounted on the steering wheel, such as a steering wheel spinner knob. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Adjusting the vibration warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi active lane assist**.

Vibration warning

You can switch the additional vibration warning in the steering wheel on or off.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Audi side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

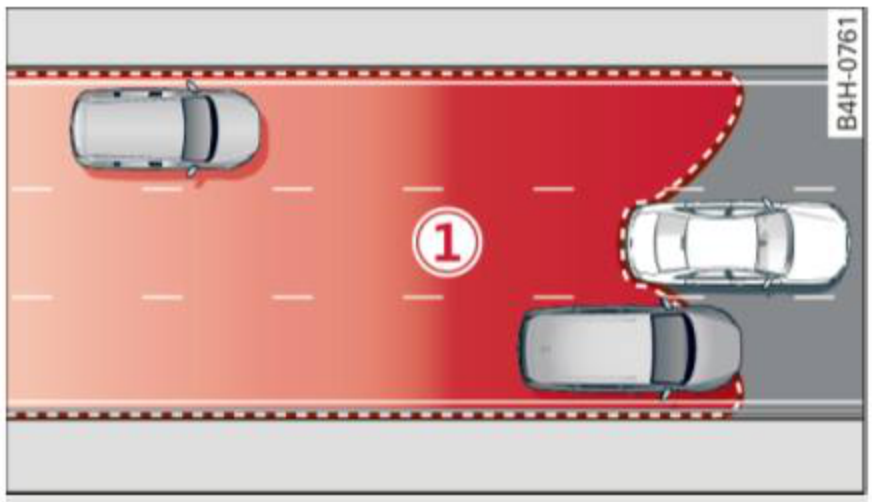


Fig. 104 Sensor detection range

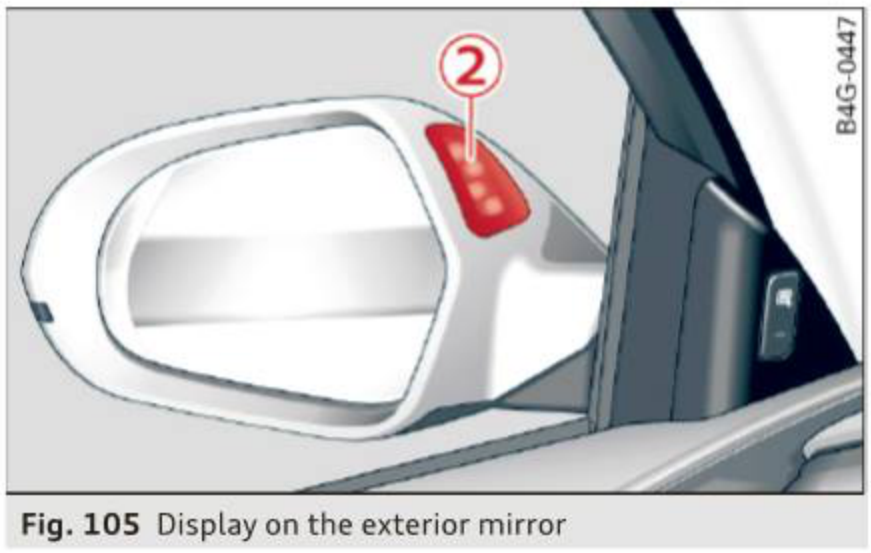


Fig. 105 Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range (1) ⇨ *fig. 104*: if a lane change is classified as critical, the display (2) in the exterior mirror ⇨ *fig. 105* turns on.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim.

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If the display in a mirror blinks brightly when you activate a turn signal, side assist is *warning* you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the exterior mirrors and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 100*.

Applies to: vehicles with active lane assist

The display in the mirror can also blink if you have not activated a turn signal: if you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears you will be leaving the lane, side assist will warn you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical.

Tips

You can adjust the brightness on of the display on the rearview mirror ⇨ *page 101*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

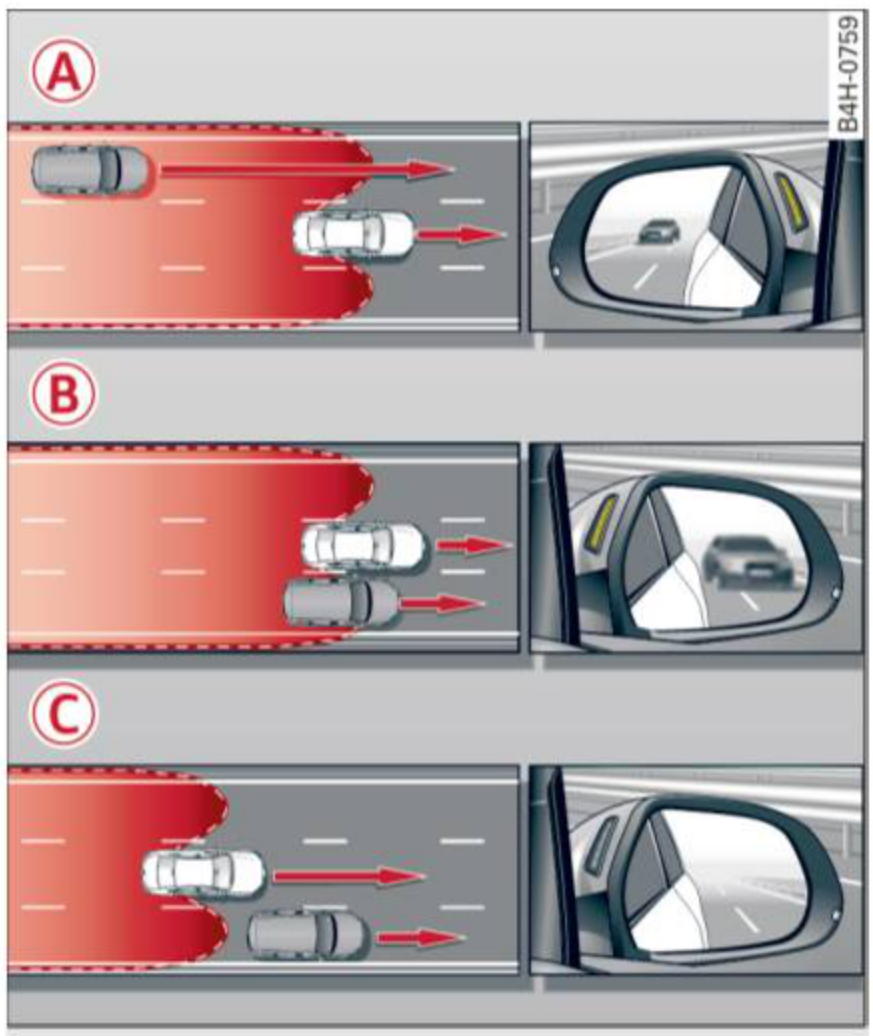


Fig. 106 Driving situations



Fig. 107 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

Ⓐ Vehicles that are approaching

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

Ⓑ Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

Ⓒ Vehicles you are passing

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed is greater than 9 mph (15 km/h)).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

– If the lanes are narrow or if you are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected a vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
– If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
– If side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
– In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 107* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because they will impair the function. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 228*.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers.
– In some situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example: ▶

– If vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
– In poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
– On very wide lanes, in tight curves, or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

– Audi side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions, which can increase the risk of accidents.
– Please note that side assist only displays approaching vehicles or vehicles in your blind spot if your vehicle is traveling at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
– In certain situations, the system may not work or its function may be limited. For example:
  – The display may not turn on at the right time if vehicles are approaching or passing very quickly.
  – In poor weather conditions, such as heavy rain, snow or fog.
  – In very wide lanes, in tight curves or when there are slopes in the roadway, vehicles in the neighboring lanes may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can impair the system. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 258*.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

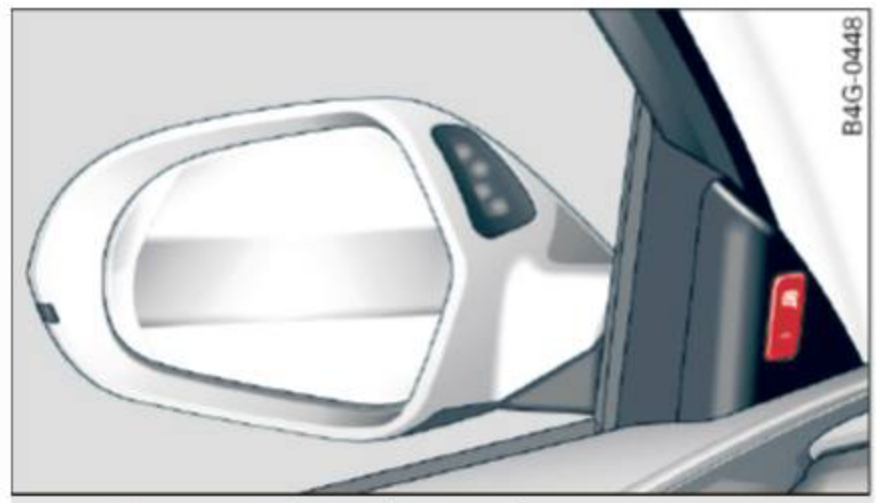


Fig. 108 Driver's door: side assist button

▸ Press the button to switch the system on and off ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 100*. The LED in the button turns on when side assist is switched on.

Adjusting the display brightness

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**.

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the automatic adjustment will set the display to the minimum or maximum level. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage. ▶

Tips

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If side assist switches off by itself, the LED in the button turns off and a message will appear in the instrument cluster display:

Audi side assist: Currently unavailable. No sensor vision

The radar sensor vision is impaired. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area in front of the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 100, fig. 107*.

Audi side assist: Currently unavailable

Side assist cannot be switched on at this time because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Audi side assist: System fault!

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi side assist: Unavailable when towing

Side assist switches off automatically when a factory-installed trailer hitch is connected to the electrical connector on the trailer. There is no guarantee the system will switch off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer.

Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal detection

Description

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

The night vision assist can detect, highlight and, if necessary, warn about pedestrians and large wild animals.

Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal detection assists you at night by using an infrared camera to monitor the area in front of your vehicle, within the limits of the system. It can display objects up to a distance of approximately 1000 feet (300 m). The thermal image detected by the camera is shown in the instrument cluster display. Warm areas appear lighter and cold areas appear darker.

Highlighting detected pedestrians and wild animals

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 109 Instrument cluster: yellow highlighted pedestrians

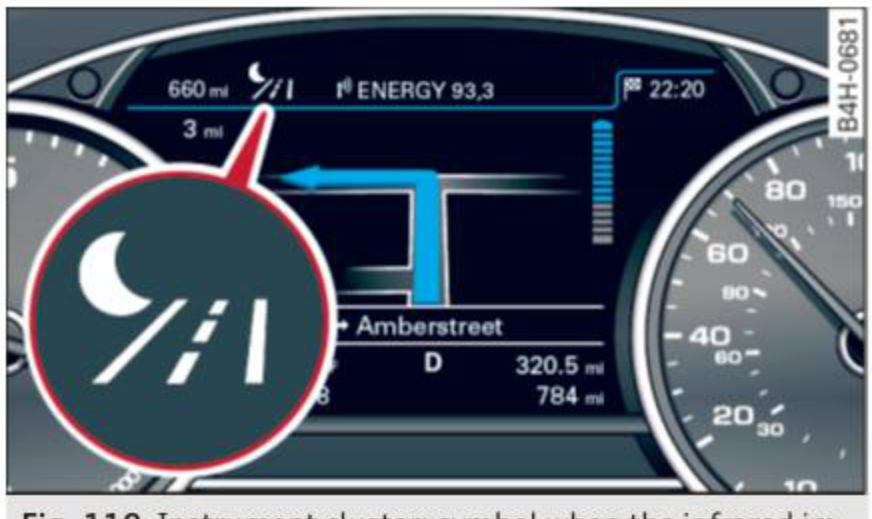


Fig. 110 Instrument cluster: symbol when the infrared image is not visible

Within the limits of the system, the night vision assist can detect pedestrians and wild animals ▶

that are between approximately 32 ft (10 m) and 295 ft (90 m) in front of the vehicle and within the detection zone. Within the limits of the system ⇨ *page 103*, a pedestrian or wild animal detected when the low beams are switched on is highlighted in yellow ⇨ *fig. 109*. Animal recognition is not active within highly developed areas. The system only detects large wild animals such as deer.

Tips

If another display such as navigation replaces the image from the night vision assist the symbol appears in a tab ⇨ *fig. 110*. You can access night vision assist using the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 21*.

Pedestrian and wild animal warning

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 111 Instrument cluster: Ⓐ pedestrian warning, Ⓑ wild animal warning

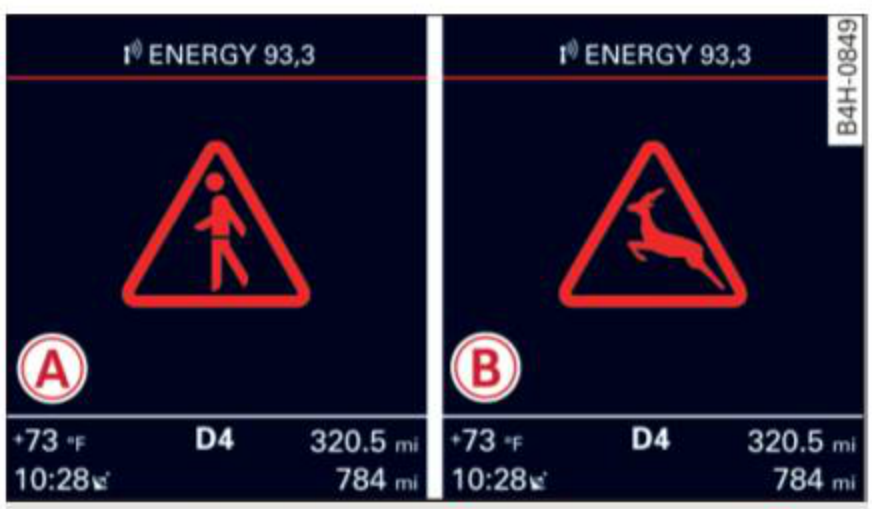


Fig. 112 Instrument cluster: Ⓐ pedestrian warning/Ⓑ wild animal warning, when the night vision assist image is not selected in the instrument cluster display

Image in the instrument cluster/head-up display*

If there are pedestrians or wild animals in an area in front of your vehicle that is classified as critical, the system will direct your attention to this:

– Pedestrians or wild animals are highlighted in red and the corresponding symbol or turns on ⇨ *fig. 111*.
– There is also an audible signal.

The area classified as critical is based on the vehicle speed and the steering wheel angle. Pedestrian and wild animal warning encourages you to pay more attention.

If the night vision assist image is replaced by another display (such as the on-board computer), the red or indicator light ⇨ *fig. 112* will appear if there is a pedestrian or wild animal warning.

If the head-up display* is switched on and the night vision assist content is activated, or will appear in the head-up display*.

Marking light*

To direct the driver's attention to a pedestrian, the headlights can flash on the pedestrian three times in a row when there is a pedestrian warning.

This occurs at speeds above approximately 35 mph (60 km/h) if you are outside of illuminated areas and no detected vehicles are shown. The high beam assistant* controls the marking light* ⇨ *page 40, High beam assistant*.

The marking light is not used for wild animals.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 113 Front of the vehicle: night vision assist camera

The following situations may affect the function of the night vision assist system:

– Poor visibility such as snow, rain, fog or heavy spray
– Dirty lens on the night vision assist camera

Make sure the night vision assist camera ⇨ *fig. 113* is not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions because that can affect the camera function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 228*.

The pedestrian and wild animal recognition depends on the temperature difference between the person/wild animal and the background. People/wild animals may not be detected if the difference is too small. The pedestrian/wild animal marking and the marking light* deactivate at temperatures above approximately 77 °F (25 °C) and during daylight. If the night vision assist image is selected in the instrument cluster display, then the symbol appears at the top on the right side.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when night vision assist is switched on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.

– Night vision assist can only warn about people and wild animals located within the visual range of the infrared camera. The visual range corresponds to the image in the instrument cluster display.
– Night vision assist may not detect people or wild animals and mark them if
  – they are not in an upright position, for example if they are sitting or lying down and/or
  – the silhouette in the display appears incomplete or interrupted, for example because the person is partially covered by a vehicle or the animal is partially covered by tall grass. This could increase the risk of an accident.
– Never try to swerve around animals if doing so will endanger you or other road users, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

– Even though the system evaluates the shape and heat given off by all detected objects, there are limits to the system. There may be false warnings.
– For technical reasons, the image pauses in split second intervals.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 114 Area around the light switch: night vision assist button

Requirement: switch the ignition on and turn the light switch to the **AUTO** position.

▸ Press the button ⇨ *fig. 114*. The heat image from the night vision camera appears in the instrument cluster display.
▸ Press the button again to switch the night vision assist off.

If conditions are bright enough, night vision assist can be switched on without moving the light switch to the **AUTO** position. Pedestrian and wild animal highlighting and warnings are only active when it is dark outside and the headlights are switched on.

Adjusting the contrast

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Night vision assist contrast**.

When the night vision assist is switched on and the image is visible in the instrument cluster display, you can adjust the contrast in the image from **Min** to **Max**.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Night vision assist: System fault

The system cannot guarantee correct function and is switched off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Night vision assist: Currently unavailable

The system cannot guarantee correct function at this time and is switched off.

Night vision assist: Only available at night with lights turned on

Night vision assist only works when it is dark outside and the headlights are on.

Night vision assist: Pedestrian marking currently unavailable

The pedestrian and wild animal marking was switched off by the system.

Audi drive select (drive settings)

Introduction

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. The driver can select **Comfort**, **Auto** and **Dynamic** modes in the Infotainment system to switch between, for example, a sporty and a comfortable driving mode.

In the **Individual** mode, the settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine setting with light steering.

Description

The following systems, among other things, are influenced by drive select:

Engine and automatic transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and automatic transmission respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements. In the sporty dynamic mode, the transmission shifts at higher speed ranges.

Adaptive air suspension*

The adaptive air suspension* is an electronically-controlled air suspension and damping system. The adjustment depends on the driving mode selected, steering movements, the driver's braking and acceleration, and as the road surface, vehicle speed and load.

The vehicle ground clearance depends on the mode selected and the speed. When you are in the **auto** mode, the highway setting is activated when you drive above 75 mph (120 km/h) for more than 30 seconds. The ground clearance is increased automatically if the speed drops below 44 mph (70 km/h) for more than 120 seconds.

Suspension control*

With the Audi Dynamic Ride Control damping control, dampening characteristics of the vehicle can be individually adjusted using drive select. This makes it possible to satisfy the desire for sporty suspension (DYNAMIC) and comfortable suspension (COMFORT) without giving up balanced tuning (AUTO).

Steering

The power steering adapts. Indirect steering that moves easily as in comfort mode is especially suited to long drives on a highway. The dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

Applies to: vehicles with dynamic steering

The steering ratio changes based on vehicle speed in order to maintain optimum steering effort for the driver at all times. This sets the steering to be less sensitive at higher speeds in order to provide improved vehicle control. At reduced speeds, steering is more direct in order to keep the steering effort as minimal as possible when the driver is maneuvering the vehicle. At low and average speeds, dynamic steering* additionally provides more responsive steering performance.

Sport differential*

As a component of the all wheel drive system (quattro) ⇨ *page 124*, the sport differential distributes the driving power to the rear axle ▶

depending on the situation. The distribution of power varies from balanced (comfort) to sporty (dynamic) depending on the selected mode. The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering.

Cornering light*

The cornering light adapts the high beams to the direction of the curve depending on the speed. The pivoting action and the lighting also adapt to the mode.

Adaptive cruise control*

The behavior when accelerating can be adjusted from comfortable to sporty, depending on the drive select mode. Adaptive cruise control also responds to the driving behavior of the vehicle ahead in a more conservative or sporty manner.

Engine sound*

The engine sound adapts to the current mode and can be subtle to sporty.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive air suspension

- Make sure there is enough clearance above and below the vehicle when parking. The height of the vehicle (ground clearance) can change once it is parked due to temperature fluctuations, changes to the load conditions and changes to the driving modes.
- When transporting the vehicle on a car carrier, train, ship or by other means, only tie the vehicle down at the running surface of the tires, which is the outer circumference. Securing the vehicle at the axle components, suspension struts or towing eyes is not permitted because the pressure in the air suspension struts can change during transport. The vehicle may not be secured sufficiently if this happens.

Tips

- In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the auto and dynamic modes.
- The S selector lever position automatically engages if the dynamic mode is selected.
- Applies to: vehicles with dynamic steering: operating noise is heard when starting or stopping the engine. This does not indicate a problem.

Selecting the driving mode

▸ To select the mode, select the following in the Infotainment: CAR function button > **Comfort**, **Auto**, **Dynamic** or **Individual**.

▸ Applies to: vehicles with a drive select button on the steering wheel: press the button repeatedly until the desired mode appears in the instrument cluster display.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

Comfort - provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

Individual - ⇨ *page 106*.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic when operating the drive select to reduce the risk of an accident.

Adjusting the Individual mode

You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Set individual** control button. Once you select the menu, you will automatically drive in the **Individual** mode. ▶

After you have closed the settings, you will automatically drive in the **Individual** mode.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust. The following table gives an overview of the characteristics.

Systems	comfort	auto	dynamic
Engine/transmission	balanced	balanced	sporty
Air suspension*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Steering	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Dynamic steering*	comfortable/indirect	balanced/direct	sporty/direct
Suspension control*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Sport differential*	balanced	agile	sporty
Adaptive cruise control*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Engine sound*	subtle	subtle/sporty[a)]	sporty

a) Subtle in the selector lever position D and sporty in S.

Tips

Your **Individual** mode settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Raising/lowering the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive air suspension

You can raise your vehicle temporarily, for example to drive over a tall curb.

Raising the vehicle

- ▸ Select the following in the Infotainment system: the CAR function button > **Raise** control button.
- ▸ Wait for the arrows or segments in the Infotainment system display to stop blinking and the vehicle to reach its final position.

Lowering the vehicle

- ▸ To lower the vehicle, select the following in the Infotainment system: the CAR function button > **Lower** control button.
- ▸ Wait for the arrows or segments in the Infotainment system display to stop blinking and the vehicle to lower completely.

Note

– Remember that your vehicle is not suitable for driving offroad even when it is raised. There is not enough ground clearance.

– If the vehicle is raised, it will lower automatically when driving 62 mph (100 km/h) or faster.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive air suspension

Air suspension: Vehicle is too high. Controlling level...

Air suspension: Vehicle is too low. Controlling level...

The driver message switches off when the level control process is complete.

Parking systems

General information

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral camera

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **parking system plus** assists you when parking by audibly and visually indicating objects detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 109*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park or maneuver ⇨ *page 110*.

The **peripheral cameras** assist you with parking and maneuvering. You are aided by various cameras depending on the vehicle equipment level ⇨ *page 113*. The parking system plus functions are also available ⇨ *page 109*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible when entering or leaving a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of small children and animals.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking system may be impaired as a result. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
- Make sure the sensors are not obstructed by stickers, deposits or other materials. If they are, the sensor function could be impaired. For additional information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 228*.

Note

- Some objects are not detected or displayed by the system under certain circumstances:
  - objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - objects with certain surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow
- If you continue driving closer to a low object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.
- Keep enough distance from the curb to reduce the risk of damage to the rims.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or when there is tall grass
  - external ultrasonic sources such as from cleaning vehicles
  - in heavy rain, snow, or thick vehicle exhaust
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 118*.
- Please refer to the instructions for towing a trailer located in ⇨ *page 118*.
- What appears in the infotainment display is somewhat time-delayed.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for the parking aid to operate.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

Parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.

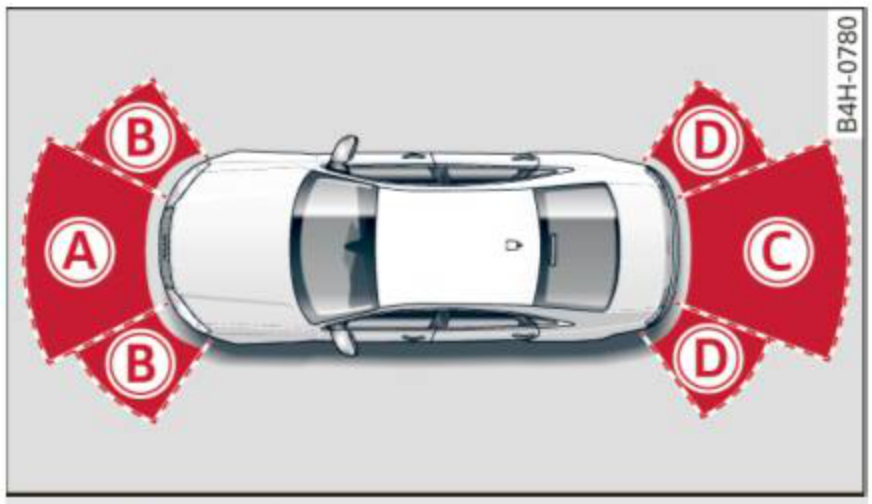


Fig. 115 Display field

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 228*.

The display field begins approximately at:

Ⓐ	4 ft (1.20 m)
Ⓑ	3 ft (0.90 m)
Ⓒ	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
Ⓓ	3 ft (0.90 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away.

Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 108*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 108*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range).

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus



Fig. 116 Center console: parking aid button

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 116*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle help you to determine the distance between you and an obstacle.

The red lines mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 108*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 108*!

4G8012721BD

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

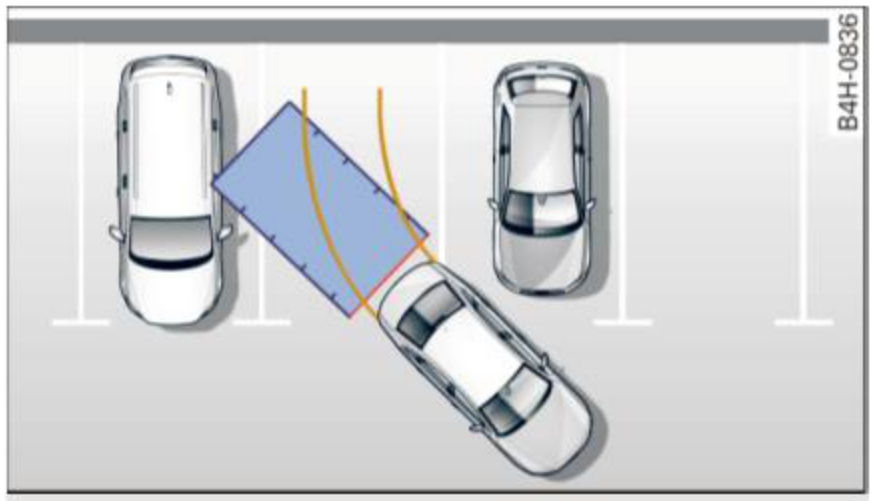


Fig. 117 Illustration: cross parking

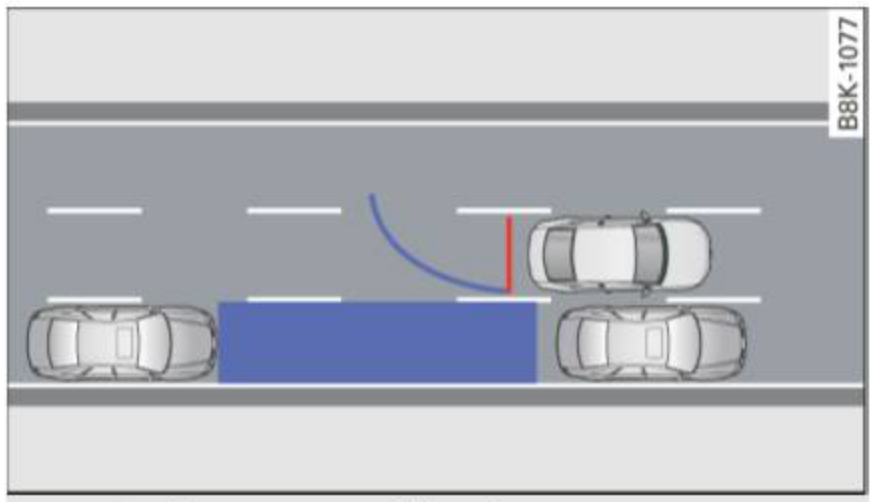


Fig. 118 Illustration: parallel parking

The rearview camera gives you two views: you can use *Cross parking* to park in a parking space or a garage, for example ⇨ *fig. 117*. You can use *parallel parking* if you would like to park on the side of the road ⇨ *fig. 118*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

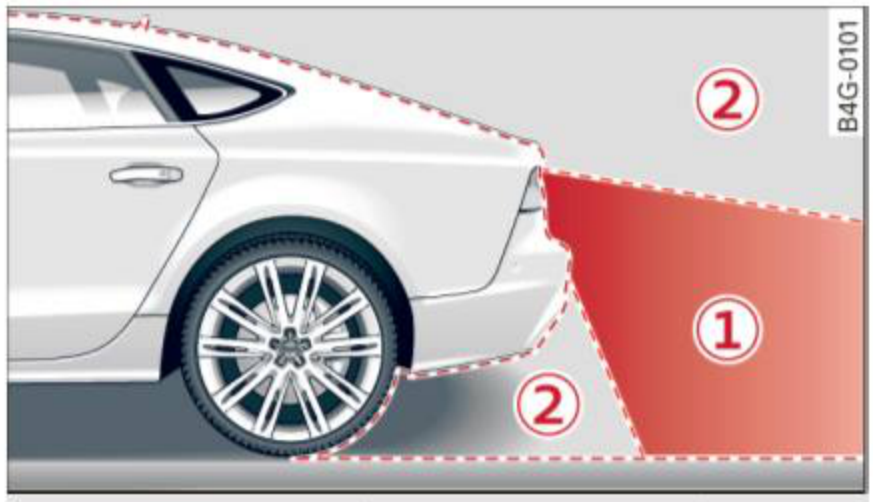


Fig. 119 Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.



Fig. 120 Luggage compartment lid: location of the rearview camera

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 120* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can affect the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 228*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 119*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are in area ②, which is not covered, are not displayed.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 108*.
- If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
- Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
- In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away: ▶

– For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the orientation lines in this case.
– If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
– If driven toward protruding objects.
– If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

– Applies to: vehicles with air suspension: the accuracy of the orientation lines and blue surfaces decreases when the vehicle is raised/lowered ⇨ *page 105*.

Note

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 108*.
– The orange-colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

Switching on

▸ Shift into reverse, or
▸ Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching between the rearview camera and optical display

▸ Press the **Graphic** control button ⑤ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 121* to see the optical display.
▸ Press the **Rear view** control button to see the rearview camera image.

Switching off

▸ Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
▸ Press the P button, or
▸ Switch the ignition off.

Tips

– The visual display in the left part of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle areas.
– You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 118*.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

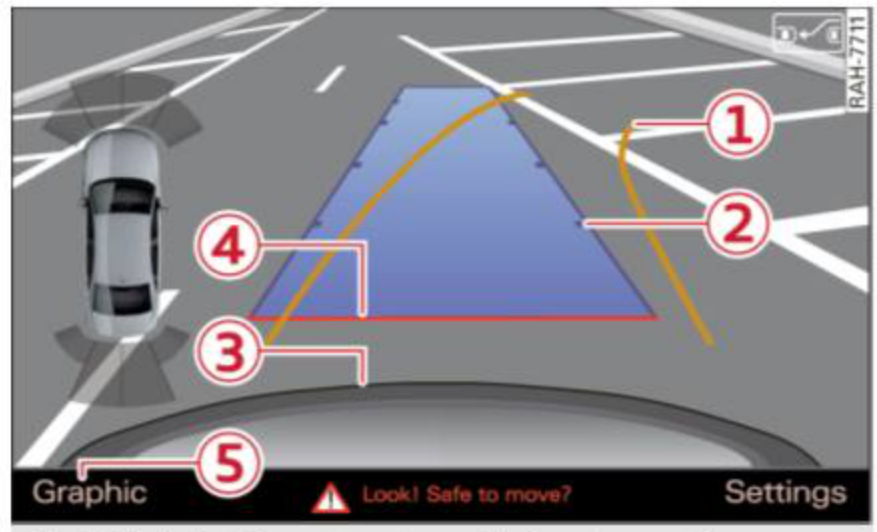


Fig. 121 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space

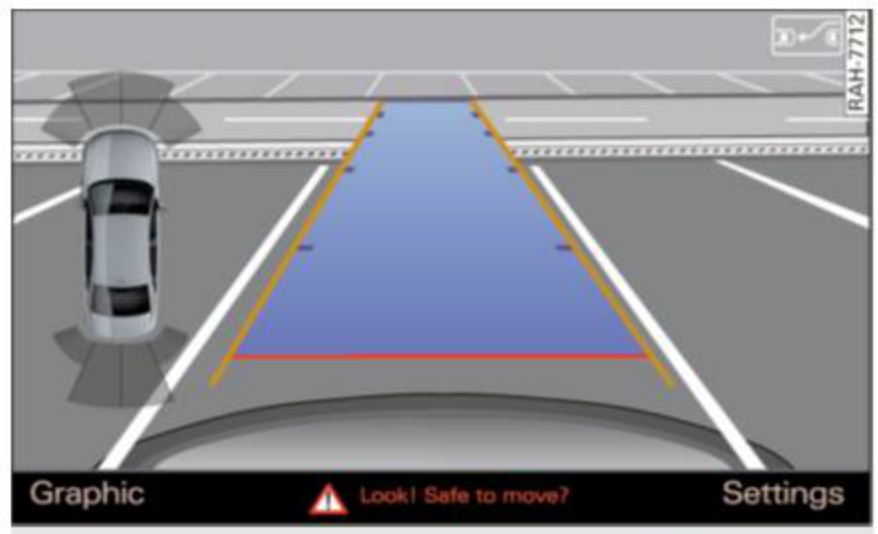


Fig. 122 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

▸ Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear.
▸ The orange orientation lines ① show the vehicle's direction of travel. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 121*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.
▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using ▶

the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 111*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object.

Parallel parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parallel parking along the side of a street.

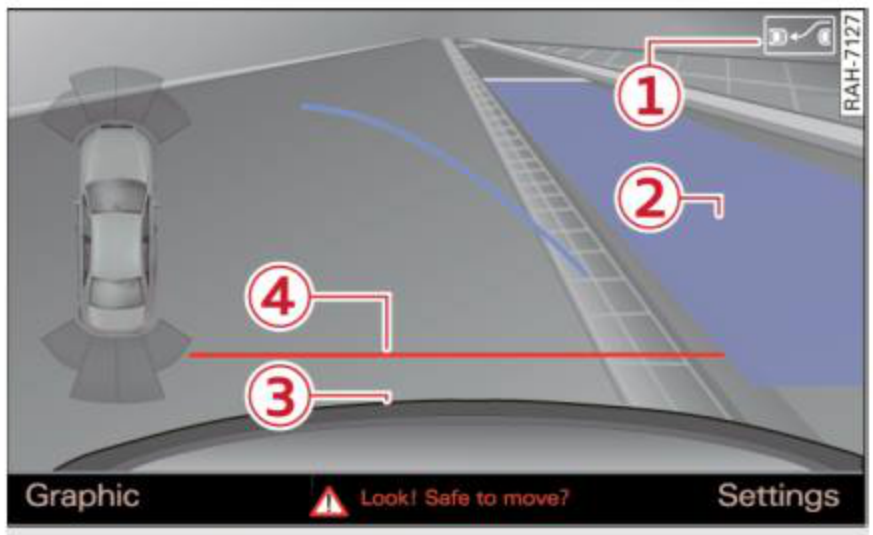


Fig. 123 Infotainment: blue surfaces aligned in the parking space

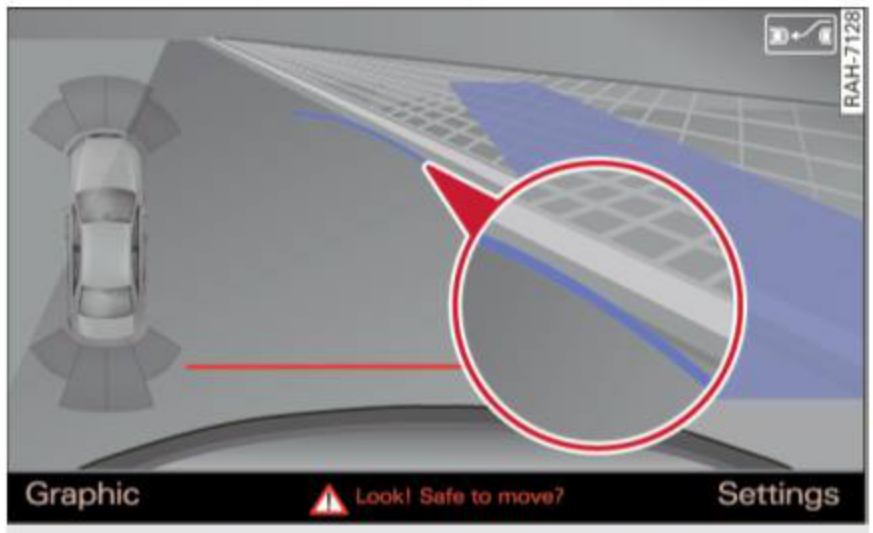


Fig. 124 Infotainment: contact of the blue curved line with the curb

Parking on the right is described here. It is identical when parking on the left.

If there is an obstacle next to the parking space (such as a wall), refer to "Information for parking next to obstacles" ⇨ *page 112*.

- ▸ Activate the turn signal.
- ▸ Position your vehicle next to a parked vehicle in front of the desired parking space. The distance to this vehicle should be approximately 3 ft. (1 m).
- ▸ Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear. The parking system is turned on and the **Cross parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Press the control button on the Infotainment unit ① ⇨ *fig. 123*. The **Parallel parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle behind you or on the parking space line ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 111*. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking space.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- ▸ Back up into the parking spot. When the blue curve ⇨ *fig. 124* is near the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*, stop the vehicle ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 111*.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- ▸ Continue to back into the parking space until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 111*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this.

Parking next to obstacles

If there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking space, position the vehicle so there is more space on that side. Position the long side of the blue surface so that there is sufficient space from the obstacle. The surface must not be touching. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel earlier. The blue curve ⇨ *fig. 124* must **not** touch the obstacle, but rather there should be enough distance.

ⓘ Note

Keep enough distance from the curb to reduce the risk of damage to the rims. ▸

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Peripheral cameras

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

With this equipment, the parking system plus* ⇨ *page 109* is supplemented with various peripheral cameras.

Depending on vehicle equipment, you are provided with the following views: area around the vehicle, front corner view and rear corner view, view in front of the vehicle and behind the vehicle.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

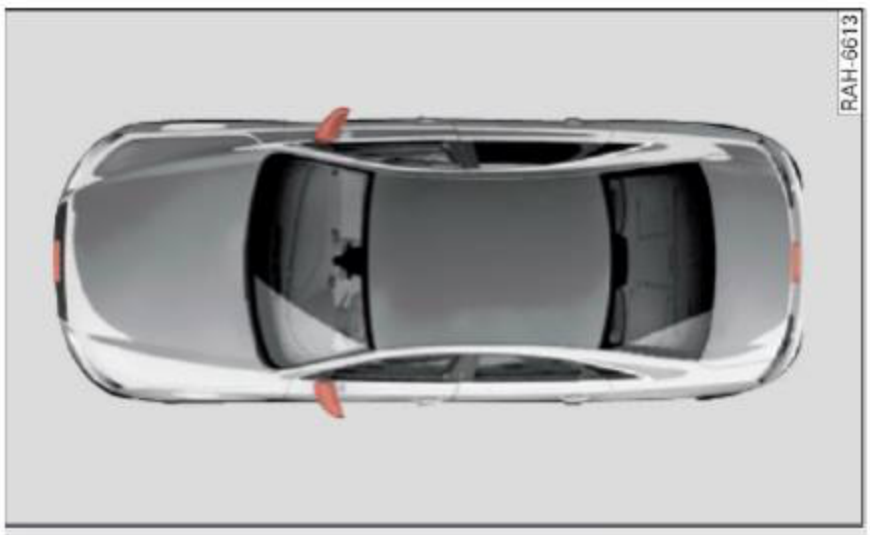


Fig. 125 Location of peripheral cameras

The peripheral cameras are located in the radiator grille and in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 125*.

Make sure that the lenses are not covered by deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 228*.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and the blue surfaces is reduced if the adaptive air suspension* is faulty, if the vehicle is lifted or if the **Dynamic** mode is activated ⇨ *page 105*.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 108*.
- If the position or the installation angle of a camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Use the **Rear** mode and the **Corner view (rear)** mode only when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Otherwise the image in the display will be incorrect.
- The vehicle surroundings are shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.
- Camera lenses enlarge and distort the field of vision. The objects appear both altered and inaccurate on the screen.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 108*.
- The Infotainment display shows the direction in which the rear of the vehicle is traveling based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Tips

The driver's door/front passenger's door/luggage compartment lid is open when the or symbol appears and the corresponding area of the display is grayed out.

Switching on or off

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras



Fig. 126 Center console: button P

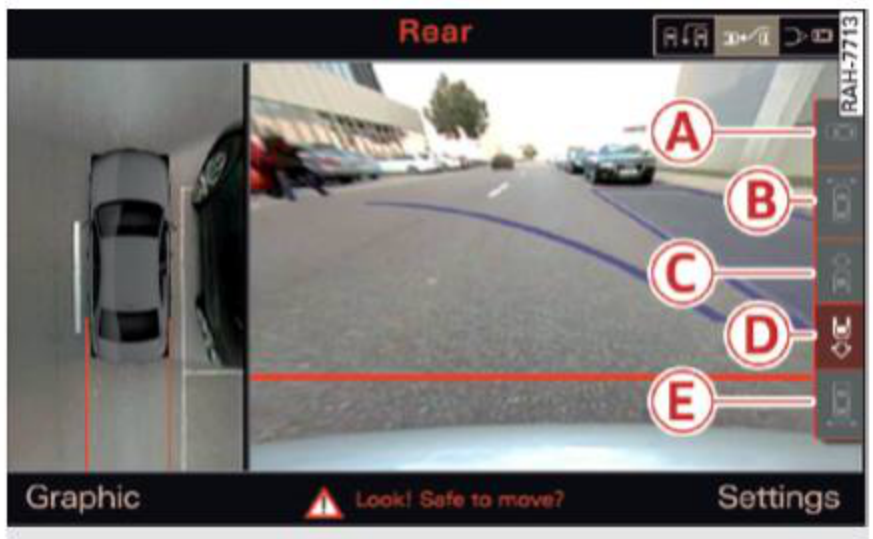


Fig. 127 Infotainment system: select the mode

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 126*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Selecting the mode

- Turn the control knob to the symbol for the desired mode Ⓐ through Ⓔ ⇨ *fig. 127* and press the control knob.

Switching between optical view and camera image

- Press the **Graphic** control button to see the optical display.
- To display the camera image, press the **Camera** control button.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

You may select from the following modes:

Ⓐ - Surrounding ⇨ *page 114*

Ⓑ - Corner view (front) ⇨ *page 115*

Ⓒ - Front ⇨ *page 115*

Ⓓ - Rear ⇨ *page 115*

Ⓔ - Corner view (rear) ⇨ *page 115*

Surrounding

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras



Fig. 128 Infotainment system: Surrounding mode

The visual indicator is displayed ⇨ *page 109* in this view.

- Select the Ⓐ symbol with the control knob and press the control knob.

Corner view (front)/corner view (rear)

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

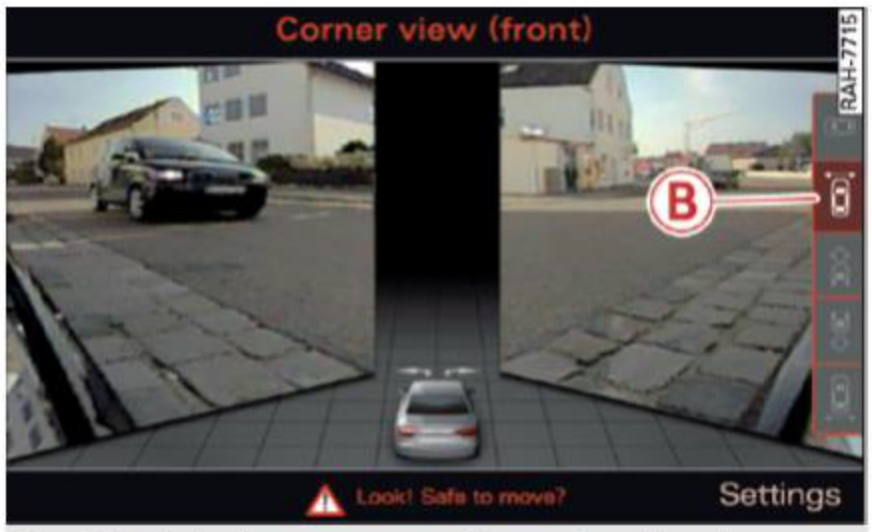


Fig. 129 Infotainment system: Corner view (front)



Fig. 130 Infotainment system: Corner view (rear)

This view can assist you for example, when you are exiting from an area with poor visibility. The area at the front and rear sides of the vehicles is displayed.

- ▸ To show the side view toward the front, select the symbol Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 129* with the control knob and press the control knob.
- ▸ To show the side view toward the rear, select the symbol Ⓔ ⇨ *fig. 130* with the control knob and press the control knob.

Front

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

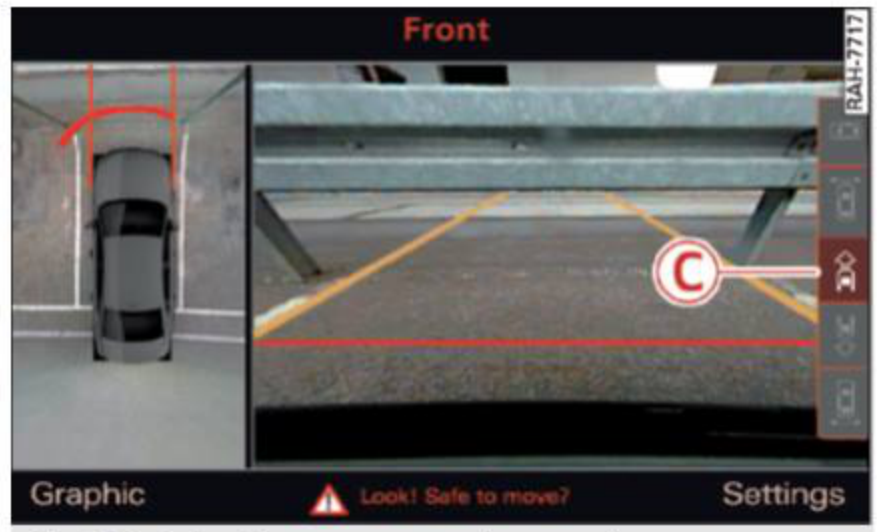


Fig. 131 Infotainment system: front mode

This view assists you for example, in using the full maneuvering range in front of the vehicle. The area in front of the vehicle is displayed. The vehicle surroundings are shown in the left area of the display. You can switch between the optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 114*.

- ▸ Select the Ⓒ symbol with the control knob. The orange orientation lines mark the expected path of the vehicle. Stop the vehicle when the red orientation line* borders an object ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*.

Rear

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

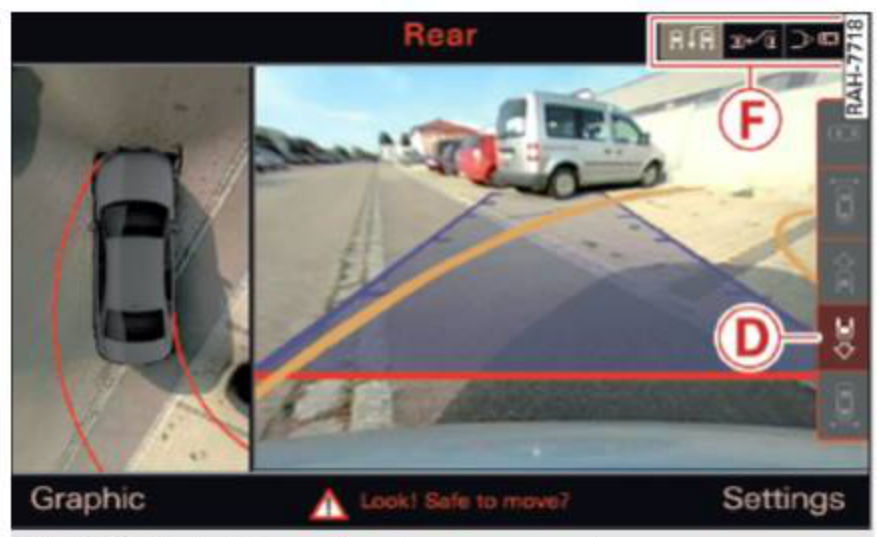


Fig. 132 Infotainment system: rear mode

This view assists you for example, in using the full maneuvering range behind the vehicle. The area behind the vehicle is displayed. The vehicle surroundings are shown in the left area of the display. You can switch between the optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 114*.

- ▸ Select the symbol Ⓓ with the control knob. ▶

You can choose between three different views in this mode.

- ▸ To cross park, parallel park or position the vehicle in front of a trailer*, press the control button (F) on the control panel repeatedly until the symbol for the desired mode is selected.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

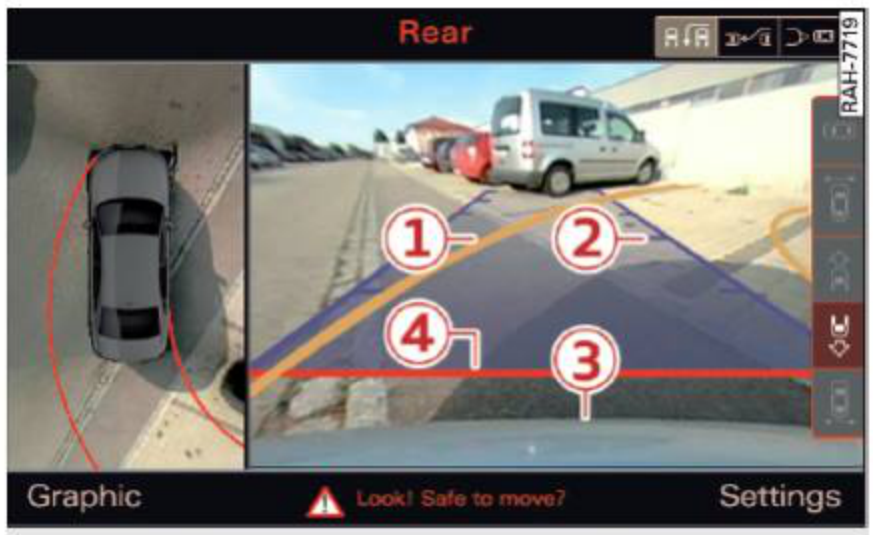


Fig. 133 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space

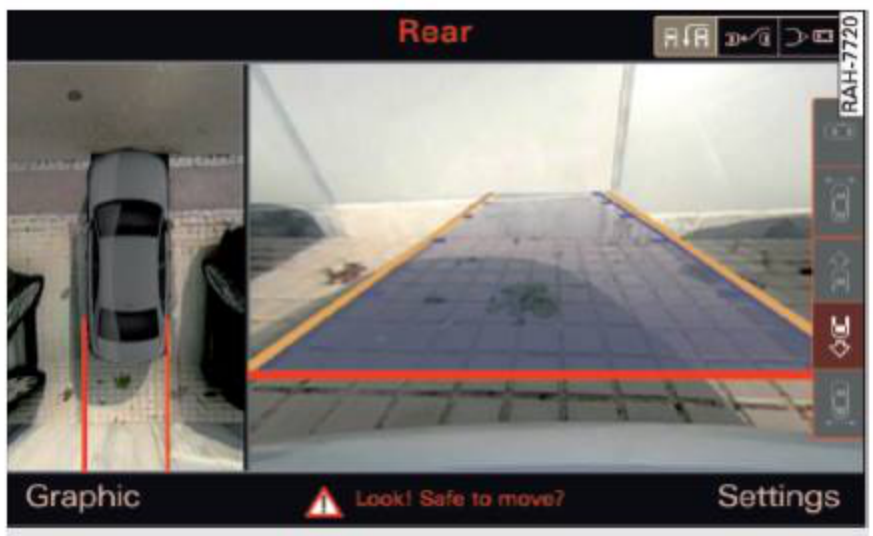


Fig. 134 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

Requirement: cross parking must be selected ⇨ *page 115*.

- ▸ The orange orientation lines (1) show the vehicle's direction of travel. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 133*. Use the markings (2) to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.
- ▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ (!) *in General information on page 113*. (3) represents the rear bumper. You should stop reversing at the latest when the red orientation line (4) borders an object ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*.

Parallel parking

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

This view may be used when parallel parking along the side of a street.



Fig. 135 Infotainment: blue surfaces aligned in the parking space

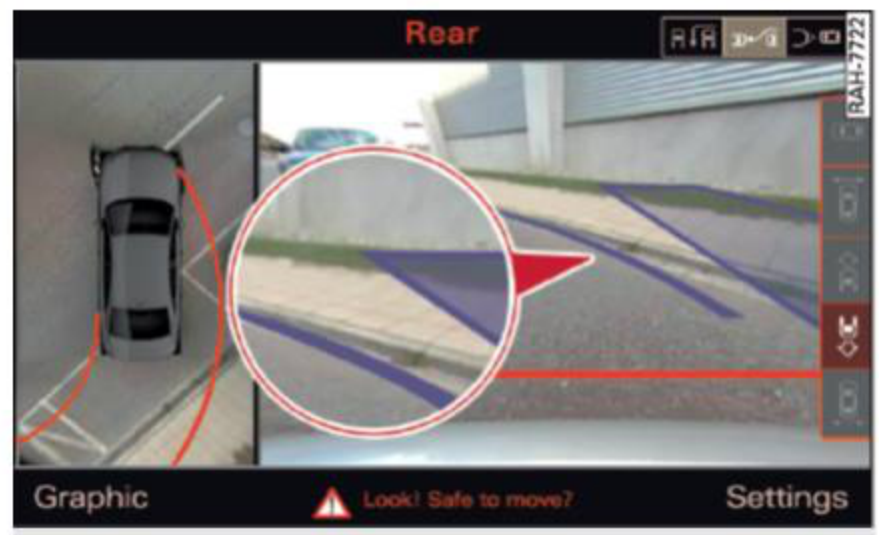


Fig. 136 Infotainment: contact of the blue curved line with the curb

Parking on the right is described here. It is identical when parking on the left.

If there is an obstacle next to the parking space (such as a wall), refer to Information for parking next to obstacles ⇨ *page 117*.

- ▸ Activate the turn signal.
- ▸ Position your vehicle next to a parked vehicle in front of the desired parking space. The distance to this vehicle should be approximately 3 ft. (1 m). ▶

- ▸ Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear. The parking system must be turned on and the **Cross parking** view must be displayed.
- ▸ Press the control button on the Infotainment unit ① ⇨ *page 112, fig. 123*. The **Parallel parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle behind you or on the parking space line ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 113*. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking space.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- ▸ Back into the parking space until the blue curve ⇨ *page 112, fig. 124* touches the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 113*. Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- ▸ Continue to back into the parking space until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 113*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this.

Parking next to obstacles

If there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking space, position the vehicle so there is more space on that side. Position the long side of the blue area so that there is sufficient space from the object. The area must not be on the curb. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel earlier. The blue curve ⇨ *page 112, fig. 124* must **not** touch the obstacle, but rather there should be enough distance.

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Trailer mode

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras and trailer hitch

This view assists you in positioning the vehicle in front of a trailer.

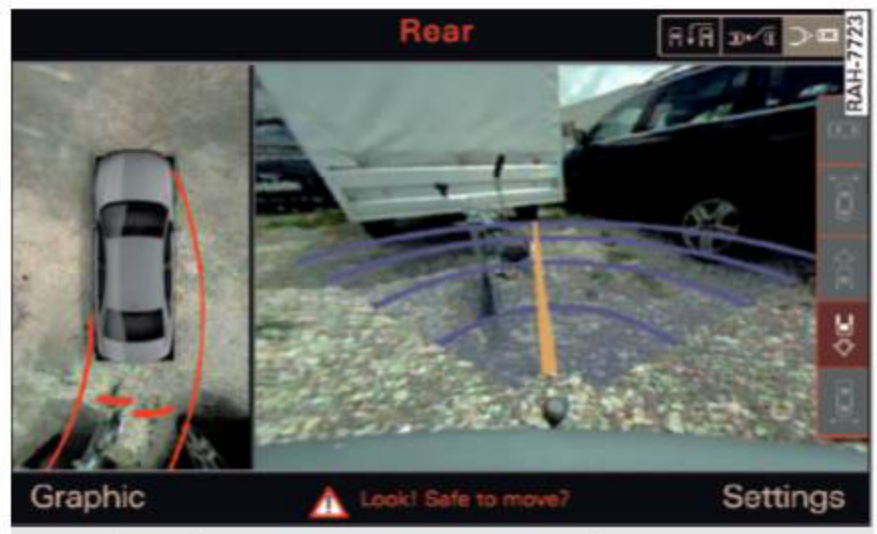


Fig. 137 Infotainment system: rear mode

Requirement: the trailer mode must be selected ⇨ *page 115*.

- ▸ Now you can position your vehicle in front of the trailer ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 113*. The orange orientation line indicates the expected path toward the trailer hitch. Use the blue lines to help you estimate the distance to the trailer hitch.

Setting the mode

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Parking aid** > **Change to front/rear** > **Auto** or **Manual**.

Auto - this view behind the vehicle (**Rear** mode) is displayed automatically when you shift into reverse. This view in front of the vehicle (**Front** mode) is displayed automatically when you shift into the forward gears.

Manual - When you switch the system on, the view behind the vehicle (**Rear** mode) is always displayed and it does not switch to the **Front** mode when a forward gear is selected.

Adjusting the display and the warning tones

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral camera

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the Infotainment.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Parking aid**.

Display

On* - an optical display is shown for the parking system plus, a rearview camera image is shown for the rearview camera*.

Off - when the parking system is switched off, only audible signals are given.

Signal tones

Front volume - volume for the front area

Rear volume - volume for the rear area

Front frequency - frequency for the front area

Rear frequency - frequency for the rear area

Music volume during nav. prompts - the volume of the audio/video source is lowered when the parking system is turned on

The new value is given briefly during the adjustment.

Tips

– The warning tones can also be adjusted directly by the visual display or the picture from the camera. Simply press the **Settings** control button.
– Changed settings are activated when the parking system is switched on again.
– The settings for volume and frequency are automatically saved and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Error messages

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral camera

There is an error in the system if the LED in the P button is blinking and you hear a continuous alarm for a few seconds after switching on the parking system or when the parking system is already activated. If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, the LED in the P button will blink the next time you switch on the parking system by shifting into reverse.

Parking system plus*

If a sensor is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓐ and Ⓑ are shown ⇨ *page 109, fig. 115*. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓒ and Ⓓ are shown. There is also a system malfunction if all segments around the vehicle are red or if no segments are displayed.

Peripheral cameras*

There is a system malfunction if the symbol appears and the corresponding display area is shown in blue. The camera is not working in this area.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Trailer hitch

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral cameras and trailer hitch

When the trailer socket is in use, the parking system rear sensors are not activated when you shift into reverse gear or when you press the P button. This results in the following restrictions.

Parking system plus*

There is no distance warning for the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to trailer mode.

Rearview camera*/peripheral cameras*

There is no distance warning for the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to trailer mode. The rearview camera image will not show the orientation lines and the blue surfaces. ▶

Tips

Trailer hitches that are not installed at the factory may cause the parking system to malfunction or they may restrict its function.

Intelligent Technology

Electronic stabilization control (ESC)

Description

Electronic stabilization control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations such as the vehicle oversteering and understeering or the wheels are spinning. The vehicle is stabilized by applying the brakes or reducing engine torque. As soon as the ESC is actively regulating, the  indicator light blinks in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over. In vehicles with adaptive cruise control*, the brake assist system is more sensitive if the distance detected to the vehicle driving ahead is too small. On vehicles with activated and functioning night vision assist*, the brake assist system can respond more sensitively if there is a warning.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the force to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up hills.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

EDL applies the brakes to a wheel that starts spinning and transfers the drive power to the other driving wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still working correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle by changing the steering torque.

In vehicles with dynamic steering*, ESC also helps to stabilize the steering in critical situations.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. The front wheel on the inside of the curve or both wheels on the inside of the curve are braked selectively as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The “automatic post-collision braking system” can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision above a certain vehicle speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if:

– the driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
– the braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system, or
– the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle electrical system are not functioning.

WARNING

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt ▶

you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.

– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!
– Press the accelerator pedal carefully when accelerating on even, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels are equipped with identical tires. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on/off

ESC turns on automatically when you start the engine.



Fig. 138 Center console: OFF button

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch sport mode on in order to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains

Applies to: RS models: the ESC is designed to function in levels. Depending on the level that is selected, the stabilization function of the ESC is limited or switched off. The amount of stabilization control will differ depending on the level.

ESC levels

	Sport mode on	Sport mode off
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the OFF button.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lights	turns on.	turns off.
Messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): Sport Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): On**

ESC levels

Applies to: RS models

	Sport mode on	ESC/ASR off	Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The stabilization function is not available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and ASR are switched off.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the OFF button briefly.	Press and hold the OFF button longer than 3 seconds.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lights	OFF turns on.	OFF and ESC OFF turn on.	OFF turns off or OFF and ESC OFF turn off.
Messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): Sport Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): Off Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): On**

WARNING

- You should only switch sport mode on or switch ESC/ASR off if your driving abilities and road conditions permit.
- The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.
- There is no vehicle stabilization when ESC/ASR are switched off.

Tips

- ESC/ASR cannot be switched off or sport mode cannot be switched on if the cruise control system* or the adaptive cruise control* is switched on.
- If the rear spoiler system malfunctions, sport mode may not switch on or it may switch off again automatically.

Brakes

New brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be “broken in” first.

The break-in period can be considerably longer for vehicles with ceramic brake rotors*. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Wear

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. This is especially true if you are driving frequently in the city and on curves or with a sporty driving style.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Noises may become more apparent at lower speeds due to the nature of the materials in the ceramic brake rotors*.

Effect of water and road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, after overnight condensation or after washing your car, the braking effect can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be “dried” first with a few careful brake applications.

At higher speeds and with the windshield wipers turned on, the brake pads press against the brake rotors for a short amount of time. This action, which is not felt by the driver, happens at regular ▶

intervals and ensures a better reaction time for the brakes in wet weather.

The braking effect can also be reduced if you are driving on salted roads and you do not apply the brakes for long periods of time. The layer of salt on the brake rotors and pads must be worn off first when the brakes are applied.

Due to its surface, the ceramic brake rotor* absorbs moisture in certain situations. Therefore, there will temporarily be less braking force than when the brakes are dry. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal harder.

Corrosion

Leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, low mileage and avoiding heavy braking can contribute to corrosion on the brake rotors and to dirty brake pads.

If you usually avoid heavy braking or if there is corrosion present, occasional heavy braking at high speeds is recommended to clean the brake rotors and pads ⇨ ⚠.

Brake system malfunction

If you notice that the brake pedal travel has *suddenly* increased, then a brake circuit in the dual-circuit brake system may have malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the problem corrected. On the way there, drive with reduced speed and keep in mind that you will need a longer distance to stop and you will need to press the brake pedal harder.

Low brake fluid level

When the brake fluid level is low, malfunctions in the brake system may occur. The brake fluid level is electronically monitored.

Brake booster

The brake booster amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It only works when the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

– Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users. This increases the risk of an accident.
– Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
– New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be “broken in” first. The break-in period can be considerably longer for vehicles with ceramic brake rotors*. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.
– Certain weather and operating conditions such as driving through water, driving in heavy rain or driving after washing your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the brakes. In the winter, ice may build up on the brake pads, rotors and drums. Check these components by braking carefully. Applying the brakes carefully several times dries the brakes and removes ice build-up.
– The efficiency of the brakes can also be impaired by driving for long stretches on roads covered with salt without using the brakes. You can remove salt deposits from the brake rotors and pads by carefully applying the brakes several times.
– If the front spoiler is damaged or you install another spoiler, make sure the front wheel brakes are ventilated properly. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat, which reduces their effectiveness.
– Failure of a brake circuit impairs braking performance, which increases braking distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed it to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– If the brake booster is not working, you will have to press much harder on the brake pedal to compensate for the lack of the booster.

Note

– Never let the brakes “rub” by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually ▶

necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
– Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and relieves the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

Tips

– If the brake booster is not working, you must press the brake pedal with much more force than normal.
– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the front wheels is not interrupted. Otherwise the brake system can become too hot.

Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering

The electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements.

Power steering adapts *electronically* based on the vehicle speed.

Indicator lights and messages

Do not drive vehicle: Steering defective

If this indicator light turns on and stays on and this message appears, the power steering may have failed.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do **not** continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: System fault You can continue driving

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the steering wheel may be more difficult to move or more sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Dynamic steering: Initializing

If the indicator light is blinking and this message appears, dynamic steering* is being initialized. The steering wheel will be easy to move after starting the engine. Re-initialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved hard to the left and right while the vehicle was not moving. The display turns off if the initialization was successful.

Tips

– If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.
– The dynamic steering stability systems ⇨ *page 120* are not available in the event of a system malfunction.
– For additional information on dynamic steering, see ⇨ *page 105*.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

In all wheel drive, all four wheels are powered.

General information

In all wheel drive, the driving power is divided between all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving behavior as well as the current road conditions. Also see ⇨ *page 120, Electronic stabilization control (ESC)*.

A center differential distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle. It works together with selective wheel torque control, which activates when driving through curves ⇨ *page 120*. With the sport differential*, power distribution to the rear wheels is variable and can be adjusted with drive select ⇨ *page 105*.

The all wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Winter tires

By using all wheel drive, your vehicle has good forward motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, in winter we recommend using winter or all season tires on all four wheels, because this will improve the braking effect.

Snow chains

If there are snow chain laws, snow chains must also be used on vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 221, Snow chains*.

Replacing tires

For vehicles with all wheel drive, only wheels with the same rolling circumference should be used. Avoid using tires with different tread depths ⇨ *page 212, New tires or wheels*.

Offroad vehicle?

Your Audi is not an offroad vehicle - there is not enough ground clearance. For this reason, avoid difficult terrain.

WARNING

- Also, in vehicles with all wheel drive, adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not be tempted to accelerate to a high speed when the road is slippery, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine does not rev higher suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. For this reason, adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

Rear spoiler

The extendable rear spoiler increases driving stability.



Fig. 139 Center console: button for the rear spoiler

The rear spoiler retracts and extends. Various operating modes (automatic or manual mode) can be activated.

Automatic mode (normal operation)

- Extends automatically: when the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 80 mph (130 km/h).
- Retracts automatically: when the vehicle speed drops below approximately 50 mph (80 km/h).

Manual mode

- Extending manually: briefly tap the button to fully extend the rear spoiler.
- Retracting manually: when driving at speeds below approximately 10 mph (20 km/h), press and hold the button to retract the rear spoiler. When at speeds between 10 mph (20 km/h) and 80 mph (130 km/h), the rear spoiler will completely retract when you tap the button.

Indicator lights

/ Rear spoiler: System fault!

The rear spoiler may not have extended due to a malfunction. This could change the vehicle's driving characteristics at high speeds. Do not drive faster than 85 mph (140 km/h). Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. The color of the indicator light depends on the vehicle speed. ▶

WARNING

When extending and retracting the rear spoiler, make sure there are no persons or objects within the spoiler range to reduce the risk of injury.

WARNING

Driving at higher speeds without the rear spoiler deployed can impair handling characteristics, making the vehicle harder to control.

– Always make sure that the spoiler is deployed when driving at speeds over 85 mph (140 km/h). If the rear spoiler warning/indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on, the rear spoiler may not have deployed.
– Never drive at speeds higher than 85 mph (140 km/h) if the spoiler is not deployed. Have the spoiler inspected as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
– Always obey speed limits and other traffic laws.

Note

– Never push on the vehicle on the rear spoiler. This could cause damage.
– To prevent damage to the rear spoiler do not lean or place anything on it.
– Only operate the rear spoiler manually when the luggage compartment lid is close and the rear spoiler moving parts are not blocked. Otherwise, damage could occur.

Tips

Clean the rear spoiler compartment every 2 to 3 months. To function correctly, the rear spoiler must be free of ice, snow and leaves.

Energy management

The starting ability is optimized

The energy management system manages the electrical energy distribution and optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.

When a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long time, the vehicle battery is drained by equipment (for example, the immobilizer). In certain circumstances, there could may not be enough energy to start the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

The energy management system Is made up of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management**, and **dynamic energy management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis determines the vehicle battery charge level. The sensors detect the battery, the battery current, and the battery temperature. The current charge level and the performance of the vehicle battery are determined based on this.

Idling current management

The idling current management decreases the energy used while parked. With the engine switched off, it manages the energy distribution to the different electrical components. Data from the battery diagnosis is taken into account for this.

Depending on the vehicle battery charge level, electrical equipment is switched off one item after the other to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the starting ability.

Dynamic energy management

While driving, dynamic energy management distributes the appropriate amount of energy to the electrical equipment. It controls the battery charge level so that the amount of energy is not ▶

greater than the amount being generated in order to maintain an optimal vehicle battery charge level.

Tips

– Energy management cannot overcome the laws of physics. Note that the charge level and length of the vehicle battery life are limited.
– When the starting ability is endangered, the indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 14*.

What you should know

Maintaining the starting ability is the highest priority.

A lot of stress is placed on the vehicle battery when driving short distances, during city driving, and at cold times of the year. A lot of energy is used but little is generated. It is also critical when the engine is not running but electrical equipment is switched on. In this case, energy is used but none is generated.

In situations like this, energy management will actively regulate the distribution of energy.

Long periods without use

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

The vehicle battery will drain if you use Infotainment functions such as listening to the radio while the engine is switched off.

The vehicle's ability to start may be impaired by the energy use, a message will appear in the Infotainment system display.

The message indicates that the system will switch off automatically soon. If you would like to continue using the functions, you must start the engine.

With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated while driving, the vehicle battery can drain. This can happen if little energy is generated but much is used, and the charge level of the vehicle battery is not optimal.

To restore the balance of energy, components that require large amounts of energy are temporarily scaled back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the seat heating* or rear window defogger is not working, then it has been temporarily reduced or switched off. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.

In addition, you may notice that the idle speed has slightly increased. That is normal and no cause for concern. By increasing the idling speed, the additional required energy will be generated and the vehicle battery will be charged.

Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

– How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
– Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
– How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and, ▶

– How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Audi will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others -

– unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees; or
– upon the official request by the police; or
– upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
– for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.
– Audi may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee and only after the recorded vehicle data has been accessed.

Vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle.

Tips

Your vehicle may be equipped with Audi connect. Your use of certain Audi connect features requires wireless services that are provided by a third party wireless telecommunications provider. For details regarding how information obtained through Audi connect is collected, processed, transmitted, used, and shared, please see your contract with the wireless telecommunications provider.

Driving safety

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

The individual safety features of your vehicle can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

– Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
– Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
– Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 54*, ⇨ *page 53*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 170, Child safety*.
- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 47, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 138*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- ▸ Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- ▸ NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- ▸ Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense. ▶

- ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

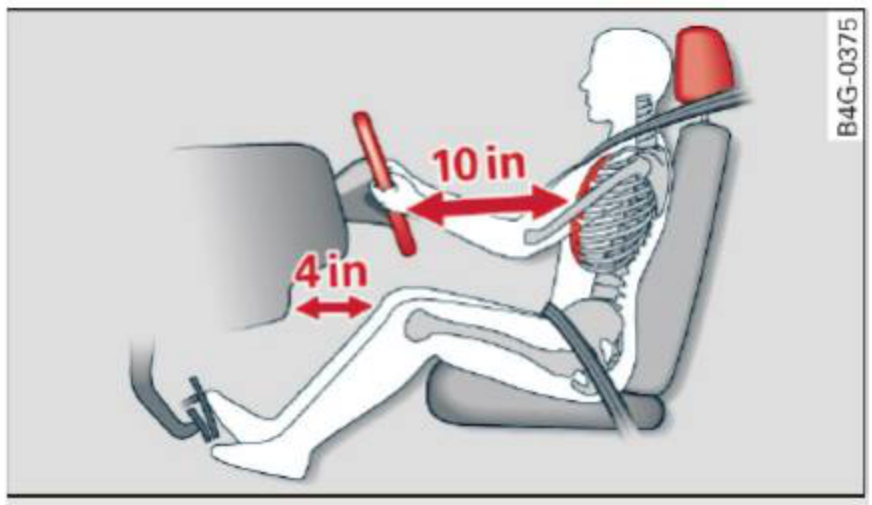


Fig. 140 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 140*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- For adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 141*.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 47*.

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates. ▶

– Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
– Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Before driving, always adjust the front seats properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
– For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
– Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 170*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 146*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
▸ For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 132*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
▸ Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 141*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 47*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Always make sure that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the front passenger's knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat properly.
– For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due ▸

to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 170*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 146*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

- For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 132*.
- Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 141*.
- Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 170*.

WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the safety belts are properly positioned on the body and securely latched. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
– For adjustable head restraints: always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection.

Proper adjustment of head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

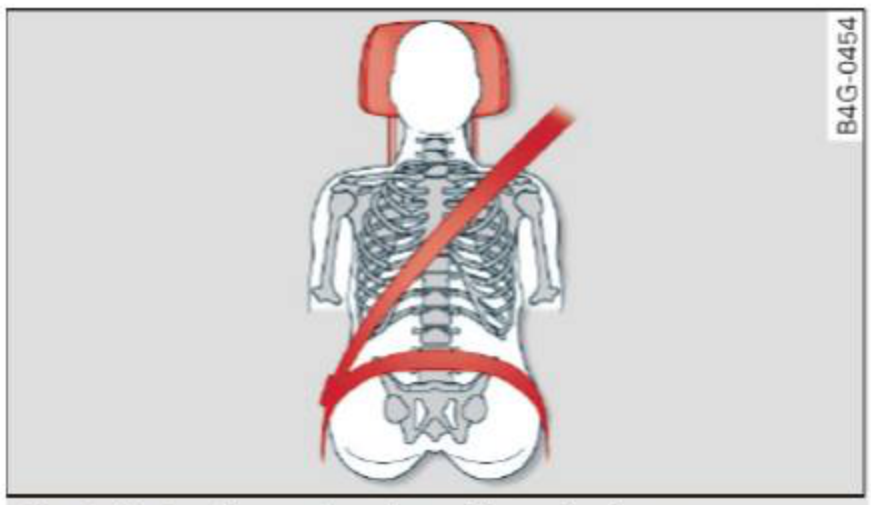


Fig. 141 Head restraint: viewed from the front

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

- Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *fig. 141*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position*, slide the center head restraint* upward at least to the next notch.

Adjusting head restraints ⇨ *page 48*.

WARNING

All seats are equipped with head restraints. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically. To help reduce the risk of injury:
– Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.
– Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint. ▶

– Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
– Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
– Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇨ *page 170*.

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

▸ Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– never stand up in the vehicle
– never stand on the seats
– never kneel on the seats
– never ride with the seatback reclined
– never lie down on the seats
– never lean up against the instrument panel
– never sit on the edge of the seat
– never sit sideways
– never lean out the window
– never put your feet out the window
– never put your feet on the instrument panel
– never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
– never ride in the footwell
– never ride in the cargo area

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Driver's and front passenger's footwell

Important safety instructions

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

– No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
– No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if ▶

the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Storing cargo correctly

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
▸ Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible. ▶

- ▸ Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 54*.
- ▸ Make sure that the rear seatback is securely latched in place.

WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
– Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

– Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  – Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  – Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
– Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the driver's side B-pillar. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
– Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 129*.

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

– Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  – Close all windows,
  – Close the power roof*,
  – Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  – Switch off the air recirculation,
  – Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the power roof* and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

– After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
– Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Tips

– Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 217*.

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 134, Loading the luggage compartment*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

- Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
- When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.
- Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact the NHTSA, you may either call:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or 1-800-424-9393

or you may write to: ▶

NHTSA
U.S. Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Ave., S.E.
West Building
Washington, DC 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired: Tel.: 1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

4G8012721BD

Safety belts

General information

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.

Number of seats

Your Audi has a total of four seating positions: two in the front and two in the rear. In some vehicles, there are five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger (on USA models only) to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 142 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.

▶

– Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.

Why use safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

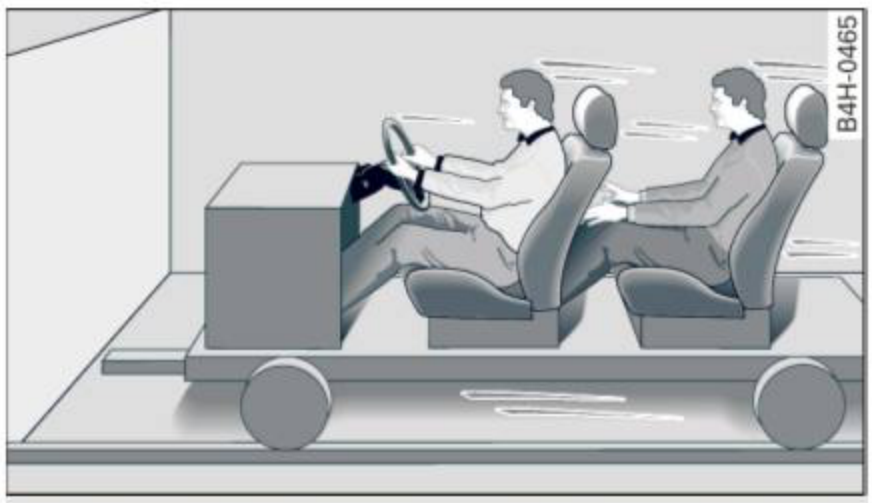


Fig. 143 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall



Fig. 144 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 143*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 144*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 145 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 146 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, ▶

instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 145*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 146*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 147 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in rollovers or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged. ▶

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table on page 230*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Safety first - everybody buckle up!



Fig. 148 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇨ *page 47, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 148*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle. ▶

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

Safety belts with pretensioners help to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioners are activated ⇨ *page 144*. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 16*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 181*.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 142, Safety belt position*.

- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
- Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 183*.

Tips

For information on safety belt pretensioners, refer to ⇨ *page 144*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

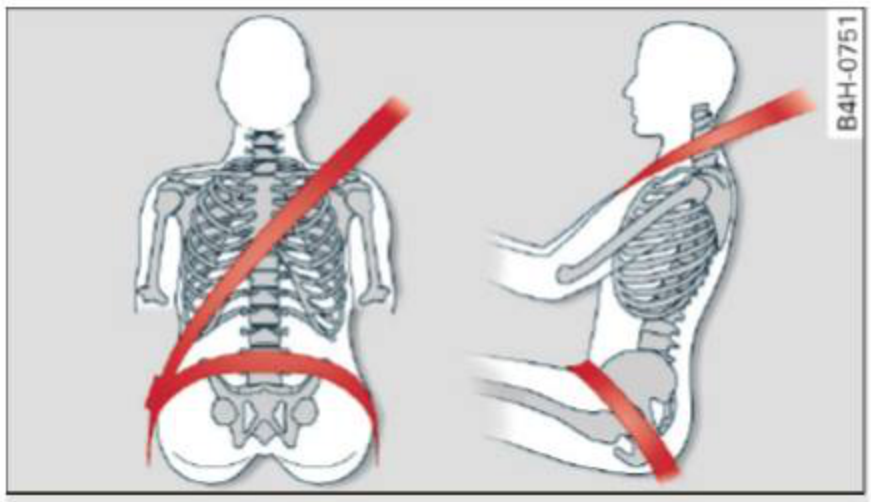


Fig. 149 Safety belt position

Use the height adjustment to change the position of the shoulder belt of the front safety belts.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 149*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 140*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 150 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 142*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and adjustable head restraint* correctly ⇨ *page 47, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen ⇨ *fig. 150*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.

– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 142*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

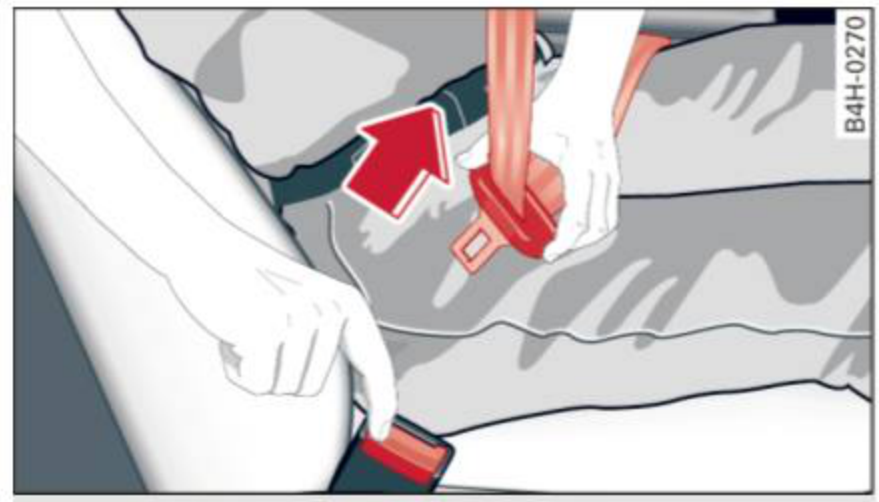


Fig. 151 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ▸ Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 151*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Adjusting safety belt height

With the aid of the safety belt height adjustment, the three point safety belt strap routing can be fitted to the shoulder area, according to body size.

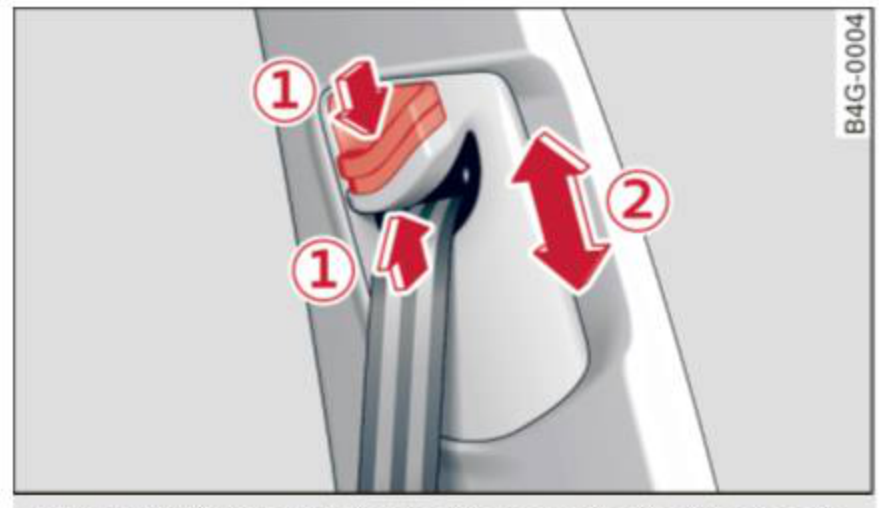


Fig. 152 Safety belt height adjustment for the front seats – loop-around fittings

The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety belt position on page 142*. ▸

- ▸ *Push* the loop-around fittings **up** ⇨ *fig. 152* ②, or
- ▸ *squeeze* together the ① button, and *push* the loop-around fittings **down** ②.
- ▸ Pull the belt to make sure that the upper attachment is properly engaged.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 140*.

Tips

With the front seats, the height adjustment of the seat can also be used to adjust the position of the safety belts.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ▸ Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- – Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- – Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 140*.

Belt tensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

Reversible safety belt tensioners*

The following functions are available when safety belts with reversible safety belt tensioners are fastened:

- – Automatic tensioners: at the start of a drive, the safety belts automatically adjust to the passenger after a certain time period or vehicle speed. To switch the automatic tensioners off, select the following in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** or **Passenger's seat** > **Automatic belt tensioner** > **Off**.
- – In certain driving situations, the safety belts may tighten with a reversible tensioning function ⇨ *page 95*.
- – The safety belts may also tighten with this reversible tensioning function in minor collisions.

Pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners

Seat belts with pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners are tensioned automatically in severe collisions, depending on the circumstances. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

WARNING

- – It is possible for the pretensioners to deploy incorrectly.
- – Any work on the tensioner system or removal and installation of system components for other repairs must be performed by a qualified workshop.
- – The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection for one collision. If the pyrotechnic pretensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced. ▸

Tips

– A fine dust is released when the pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners deploy. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:

– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

4G8012721BD

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 130*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 47*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 140*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 170*.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 130, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 47*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 170*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside of the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in rollovers.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 138*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 141, Safety belts*.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 130*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and heed the WARNINGS for important details ▶

about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 170*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for “suppression” for infants of about 12 month old and younger and for “low risk deployment” for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you switch on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the Safety Standard ⇨ *page 172*.
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system ⇨ *page 158, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 172*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 158, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*. ▶

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 170, Child safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 158, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
- Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.

▶

- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 153 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel

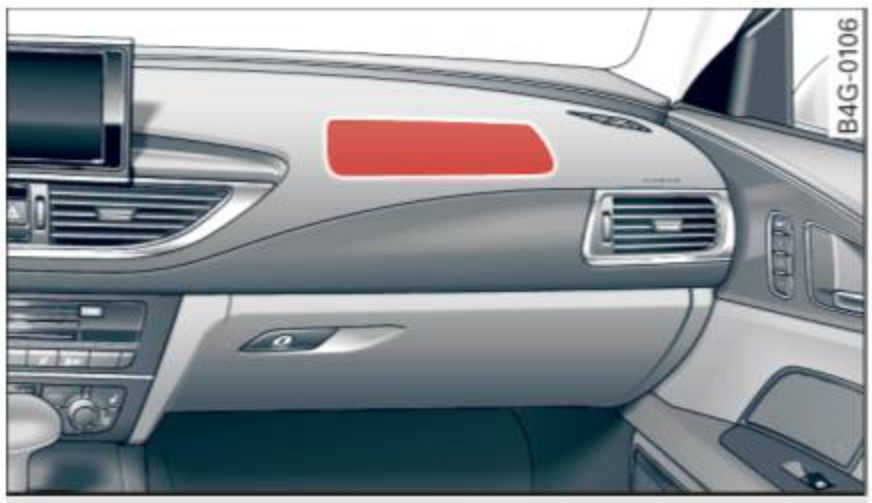


Fig. 154 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 153* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 154*. The general location of the airbags is marked “AIRBAG”.

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
- Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates. ▶

– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Always make sure nothing is in the front airbag deployment zone that could be struck by the airbag when it inflates.
– Objects in the zone of a deploying airbag can become projectiles when the airbag deploys and cause serious personal injury.
– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors; never attach then to the doors or the windshield; never place them over or near or attach them to the area marked „AIRBAG“ on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the seat backrests; never place them between these areas and you or any other person in the vehicle.
– Never attach objects to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as accessory GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during breaking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the „low risk“ option for 3- and 6-year-old children under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child with electrical capacitance greater than the combined capacitance of a typical one-year old infant restrained in one of the forward facing or rearward-facing child seats with which your vehicle was certified is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
– Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
– For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough. ▶

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 172, Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system*.

“Suppression” requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 172*,
– When a person is detected on the front passenger seat that has an electrical capacitance that is more than the total electrical capacitance of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total electrical capacitance on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 172*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 158*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly. ▶

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 146*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
– Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system on the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇨ *page 158*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced ▶

Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit “decides” whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also “decides” whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 158*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *page 158, fig. 156* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.
– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. The capacitive passenger detection mat in the front passenger seat will not function properly if it is punctured.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
– Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
– Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive ▶

passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately.

– If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger frontal airbag. If this happens, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) in the instrument cluster.
– If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the passenger frontal airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat. Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light light will go out.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts and the adjustable head restraints* to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger frontal airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front passenger frontal airbag will also be turned off if the capacitance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 158*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.

▶

– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 146*.

More important things to know about front airbags



Fig. 155 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag,
– and for adjustable head restraints: the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three-point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag also will not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side frontal airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light ⇨ *page 158* and how they work comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 147*.

▶

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.
– Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Objects on the front passenger seat could cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.

– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models):

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will come on to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 16* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 156 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 156*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light burns out, the airbag indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) will come on to signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front passenger's frontal airbag works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

– the ignition is switched on and
– the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

As soon as the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is proper for the age, size and electrical capacitance of the person occupying ▶

the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will show the status of the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag a few seconds after the ignition is switched on and the airbag indicator light goes off. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified; For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 172*.
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...
– a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
– and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 147, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 170, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light comes on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight.
– make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) is placed or used on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket;
– make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;
– make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
– make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion. ▶

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light still does not come on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
– move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG light should NOT come on ...

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

– If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 16* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.

– Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
– Always install forward or rear-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer. ▶

– If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

Tips

If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the frontal airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

– Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
– Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
– For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
– All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
– For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
– Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
– Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  – Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  – Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  – Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– The airbag system can deploy only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components ▶

must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.

– For safety reasons in severe accidents, the alternator and starter are separated from the vehicle battery with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.
  – Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified technicians who have the experience, information and special tools necessary to perform the work safely.
  – If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

– Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
– Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

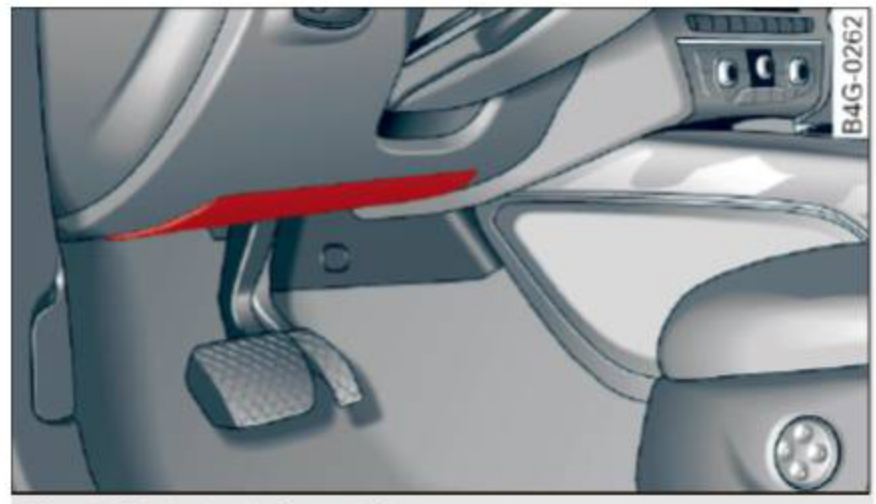


Fig. 157 Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 157*, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment ▶

threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 156, More important things to know about front airbags*.

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 138, General information*.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module
– Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
– in side collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers
– in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 16*.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 156*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 16* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How knee airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully inflated knee airbags.



Fig. 158 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 156, fig. 155*. ▶

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:
  - at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
  - at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
- Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
  - Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
  - Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can interfere with or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.
- Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
- If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision
  ⇨ *page 170, Child safety.*

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 159 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 159* and the rear backrest facing the doors. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly. The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Please be sure to read the important information and warnings whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle: Safety belts ⇨ *page 138*, Airbag system ⇨ *page 146*, Child safety ⇨ *page 170*.

The side airbag system basically consists of:

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two airbags located in the sides of the front backrests and the two airbags* located in the rear backrest
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's, front and rear passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 166, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 138, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together. ▶

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 166*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 16* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

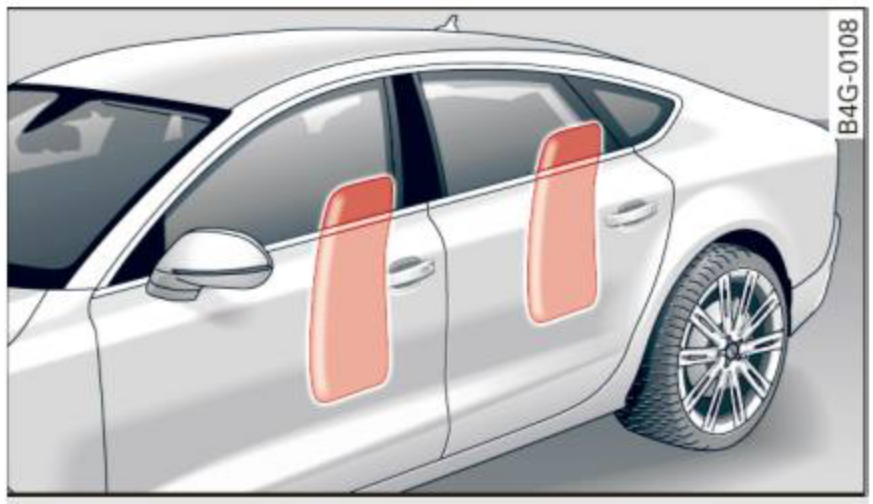


Fig. 160 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle, rear side airbag

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked “AIRBAG”. It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 170, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 160*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  – Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  – Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  – Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  – Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
– Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  – Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  – Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy. ▶

– Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the seat backrests.
– Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.
– Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
– Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
– The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
– Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 170, Child safety*.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
– Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
– Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
– Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
– Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
– Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

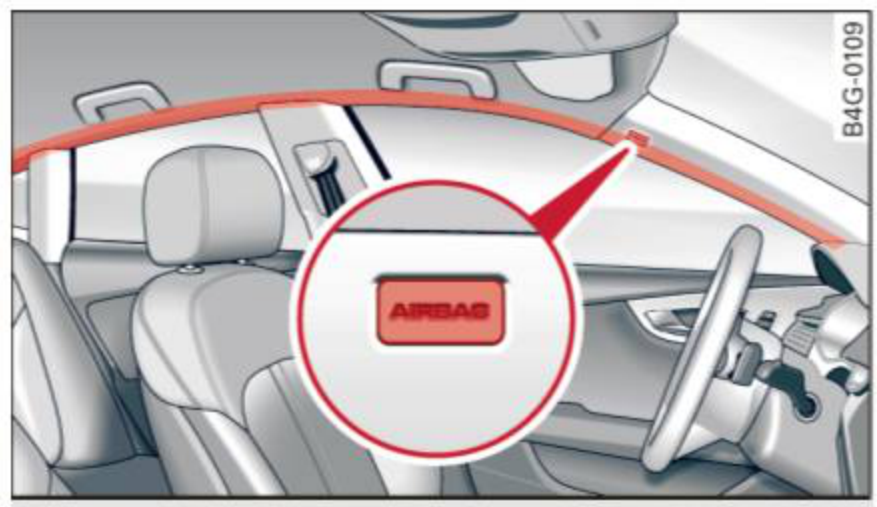


Fig. 161 Side curtain airbags, driver's side: side curtain airbag location

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 161*. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG” on the windshield frame.

The side curtain airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers. ▶

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 168, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 138, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows with ejection mitigation features
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

– if the ignition is switched off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 47, Seats and storage*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 16* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How side curtain airbags work

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 162 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 162*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 170*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbag inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Audi sun shades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the side curtain airbag inflates.
- A deploying airbag inflates in a fraction of a second and with great force.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a side curtain airbag.
- The airbag deployment zones must be kept clear at all times. Make sure there are no objects, pets, or other persons in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.

WARNING

- The airbag system can deploy only once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 139, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

All children, especially those 12 years and younger must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings ⇨ *page 147*. Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information please see information provided by the:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at : http://www.safercar.gov (for the USA)
- Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: http://www.tc.gc.ca (for Canada)

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 174, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  - Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on ▶

all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle ⇨ *page 138, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 146, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 170, Important information*.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low-risk” requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or a child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system registers the changes that result in an electrical field when a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket are on the front passenger seat. The change in the measured capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The measured capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1-year old child. When a child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure ▶

that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child and child restraint are correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different "footprints", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 176*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 181*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 176*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
– Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  – When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  – Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  – Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
– Never allow children under 57 inches (1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
– Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
– Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  – Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  – The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.

▶

– The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  – Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  – Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
  – Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  – Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  – Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  – Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  – Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  – If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  – Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  – Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  – Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
  – Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 138, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 146, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 170, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

▶

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat

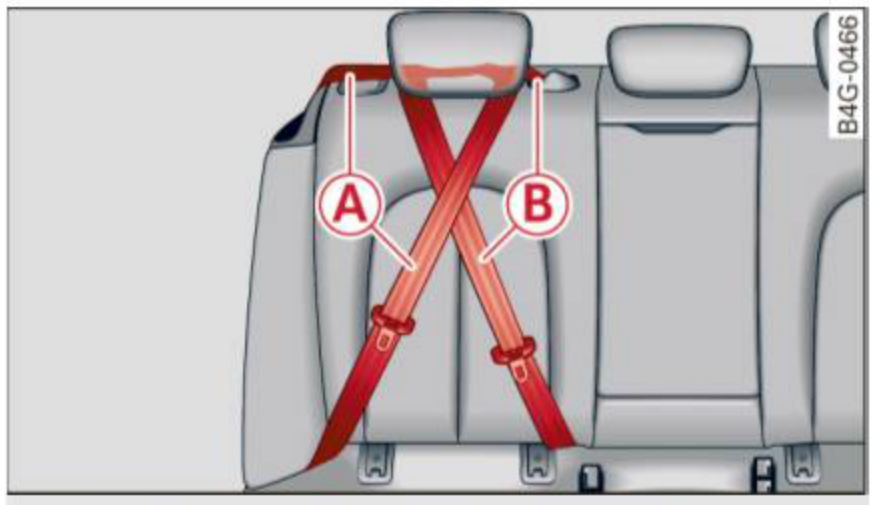


Fig. 163 Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. Ⓐ - outer rear safety belt, Ⓑ - center rear safety belt*

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Guide the safety belt webbings Ⓐ and Ⓑ* behind the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed ⇨ *fig. 163*. When doing so, do not engage the convertible locking retractor! You should not hear a "clicking" sound when winding up the safety belt.
– Let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.

– Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed.
– Never activate the convertible locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.
– Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

Child safety seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs. or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.



Fig. 164 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 181* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 176*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs. or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant ▶

seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 164*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 147, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
- Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 138, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 146, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 170, Important information*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

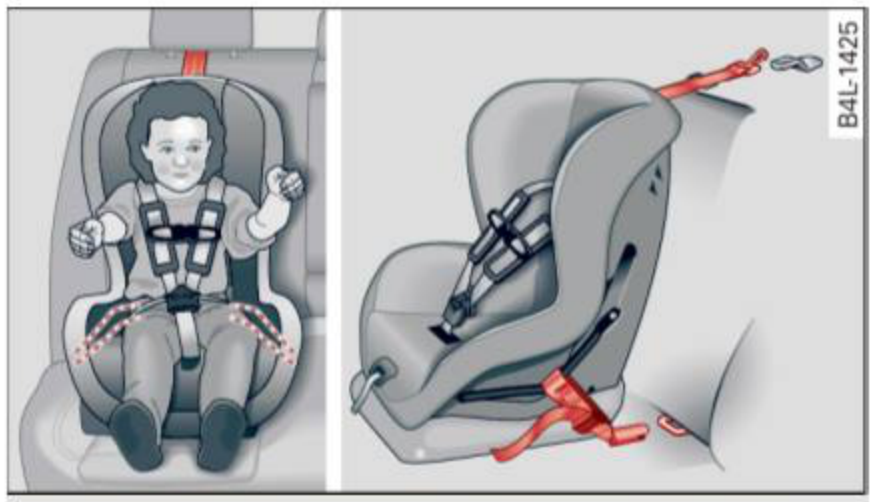


Fig. 165 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

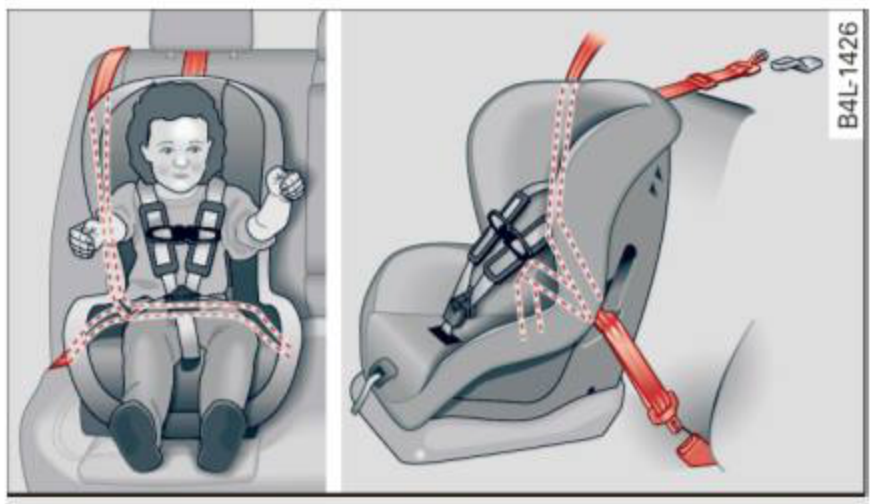


Fig. 166 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

- ▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 181* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 181*.
- ▸ If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 187*.
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 176*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs. (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 165* and ⇨ *fig. 166*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- – Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- – The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- – Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- – If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- – The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. ▸

– For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 49*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 138, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 146, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 170, Important information*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

– Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall.



Fig. 167 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 176*.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's ▶

body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure that the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 138*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 49*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 158, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 138, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 146, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 170, Important information*.

Securing child safety seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, ▶

should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
- If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
- It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 170*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 147, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

- Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 158, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light signals the correct front passenger frontal airbag status.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints: ▶

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:
– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

▸ Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
▸ Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
▸ Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
▸ Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
▸ Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
▸ You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
▸ Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
▸ Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.
– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash. ▶

– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 170*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 147, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.
– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 170*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 147, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children)

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

In the United States, the combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the LATCH system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren". In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

In other countries the term "ISOFIX" is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or ▸

push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
- Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Location

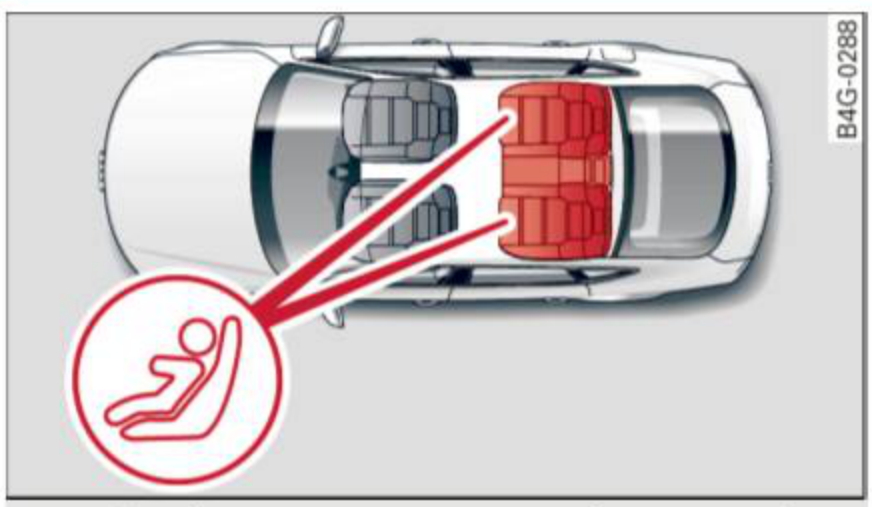


Fig. 168 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.

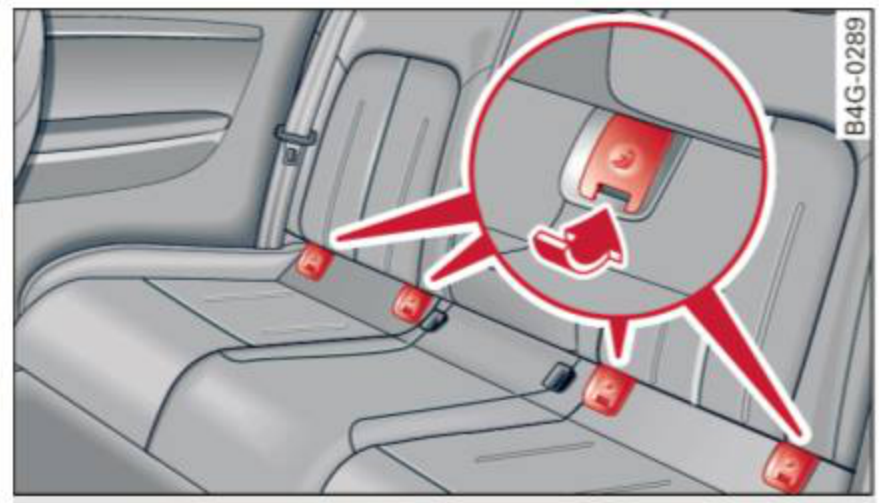


Fig. 169 Lower anchorages, covers marked

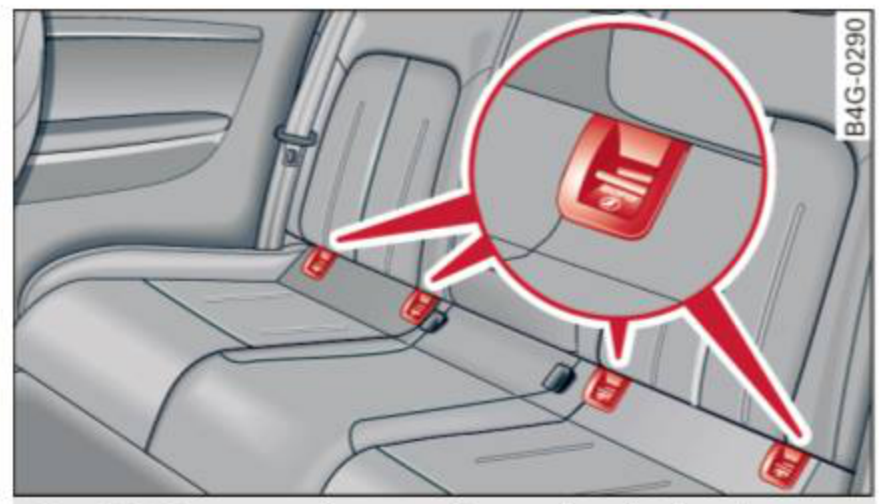


Fig. 170 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Lower anchorages

The circular markings on the rear seat help you to identify the location of lower anchorages for the two outboard seating positions ⇨ *fig. 169*. The LATCH lower universal anchorage attachment points are between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion.

Remove the covers ⇨ *fig. 169* to access the lower anchorage attachment points.

The lower anchorage attachment points are visible ⇨ *fig. 170*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system. ▶

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
– Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 170, Child safety*.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

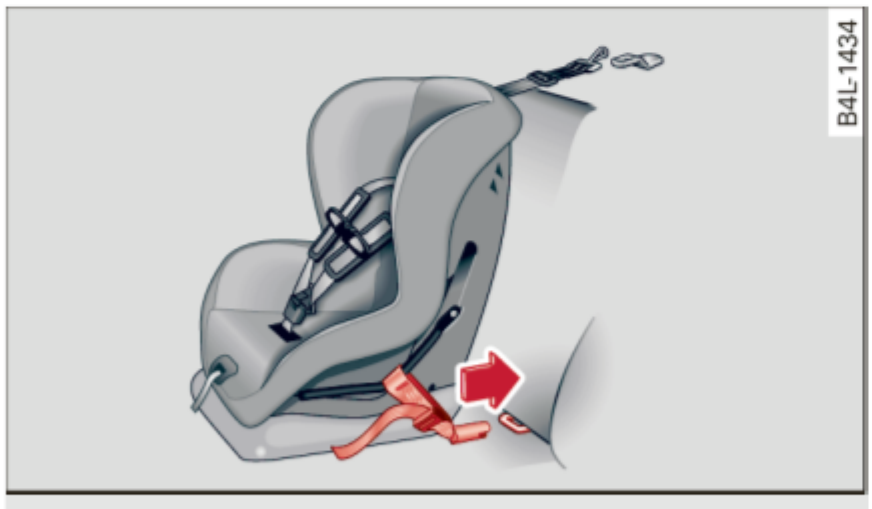


Fig. 171 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

Mounting

- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- ▸ Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 171*.
- ▸ Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- ▸ Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- ▸ Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 170, Child safety*.

Tether anchors and tether straps

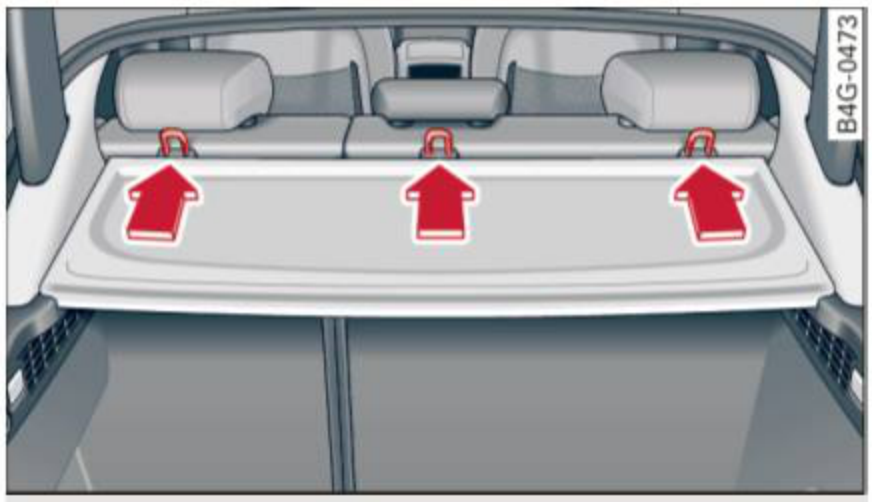


Fig. 172 Tether anchors: attachment hook locations behind the rear seatbacks

The tether anchors for the two/three* rear seating positions are located on the backside of the rear seatbacks ⇨ *fig. 172*. Vehicles with two rear seating positions are equipped with two tether anchors.

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
- Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
- Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage

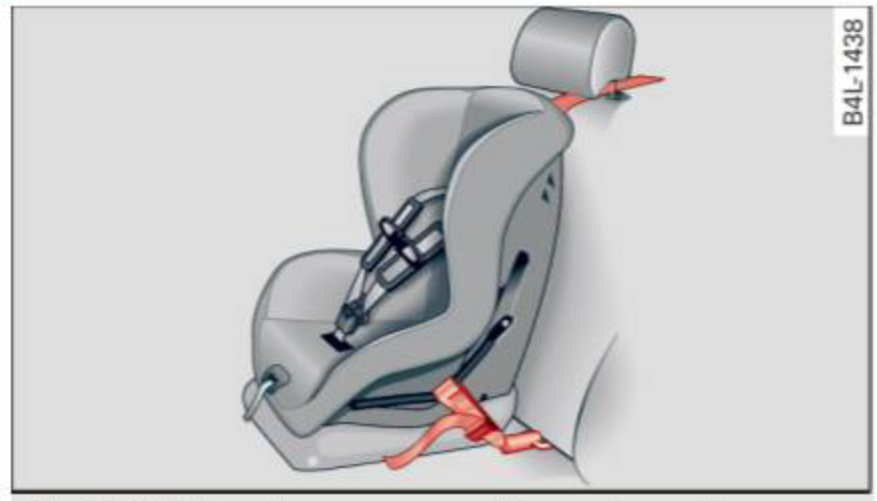


Fig. 173 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting

Installing the tether strap

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap under or sideways of the rear head restraint ⇨ *fig. 173* (depending on the child restraint).
- ▸ Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the tether anchorage.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. ▶

Releasing the tether strap

- ▸ Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
http://www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A.
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
http://www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Relations
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

Checking and Filling

Fuel

Gasoline grade

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engines

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found on the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R+M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The following headings match the corresponding sticker in the fuel filler door.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ ⓘ.

The maximum engine power is only reached if premium gasoline 91 AKI / 95 RON is used.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R +M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

Note

- Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
- When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

Tips

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

Blended gasoline

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engine

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must not contain more than 15% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

- Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.

- If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
- Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
- Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
- If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, carbon deposit build-ups can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refueling

Fueling procedure

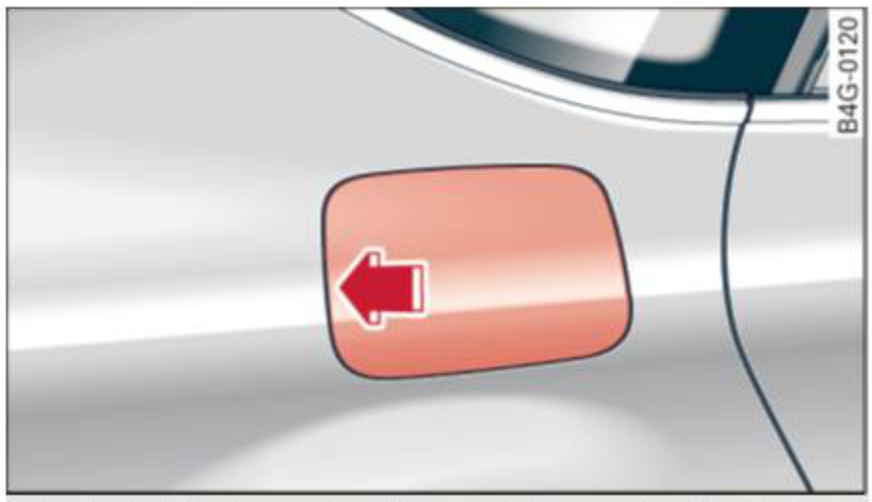


Fig. 174 Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door

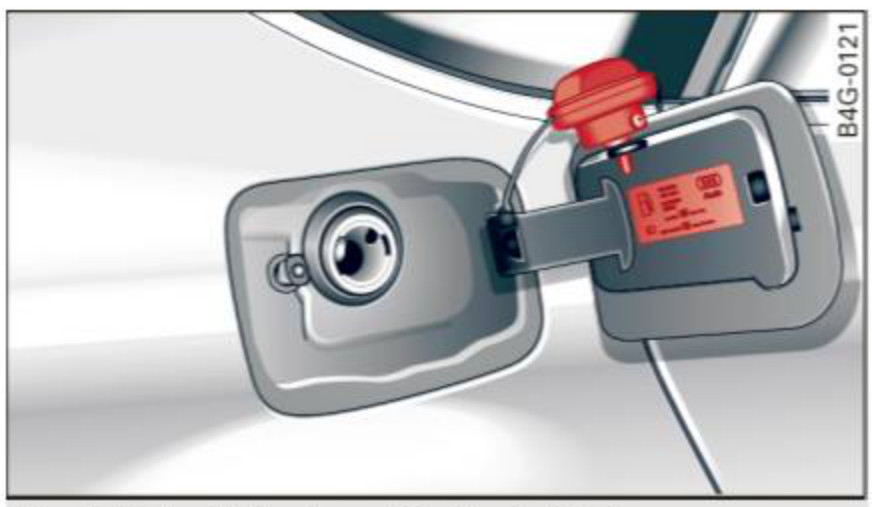


Fig. 175 Fuel filler door with attached fuel cap

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open ⇨ *fig. 174*.
- ▸ Unscrew the tank cap counterclockwise.
- ▸ Place the cap from above on the open fuel filler door ⇨ *fig. 175*.
- ▸ Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck.
- ▸ Begin fueling. Once the fuel pump nozzle turns off the first time, the fuel tank is full. Do not continue fueling, or else the expansion space in the tank will be filled with fuel.
- ▸ After the fuel pump has switched off, wait five seconds before removing it to allow the rest of the fuel to finish dripping into the fuel tank.
- ▸ Turn the fuel cap clockwise until you hear it lock.
- ▸ Close the fuel filler door and then press on the left side until it latches.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel ▶

filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 189*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 254*.

To reduce the risk of fuel leaking out or vapors escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is closed correctly. Otherwise the  indicator light will turn on.

If the central locking system malfunctions, the fuel filler door may emergency release ⇨ *page 192*.

WARNING

An improper fueling procedure and improper handling of fuel can lead to explosions, fires, severe burns and other injuries.

– Do not smoke and keep away from open flames.
– The ignition must be switched off when refueling.
– Cell phones, radio devices and other radio equipment should always be switched off when refueling. Electromagnetic rays could cause sparks and start a fire.
– If you do not insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the filler tube, then fuel can leak out. Spilled fuel can ignite and start a fire.
– Never get into the vehicle when refueling. If there is an exceptional situation where the vehicle must be entered, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the fuel pump nozzle again. This will reduce the risk of electrostatic discharge that can cause flying sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refueling.

WARNING

We recommend that you do not transport any fuel containers in the vehicle. Fuel could leak out of the container and ignite, especially during an accident. This can cause explosions, fires and injuries.

– If you must transport fuel in a fuel container, please note the following:
– Always place a fuel container on the ground before filling. Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is in or on the vehicle. Electrostatic charge can occur while refueling and the fuel vapors could ignite.
– For fuel containers made of metal, the fuel pump nozzle must always maintain contact with the container to reduce the risk of static charge.
– Insert the fuel pump nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening while refueling.
– Follow legal requirements when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
– Make sure that the fuel container meets the industry standards, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

Note

– Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.
– Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Do not overfill the fuel tank, otherwise fuel can leak out when the vehicle is warming up.

Tips

The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside using the central locking switch.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the central locking system is faulty, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.

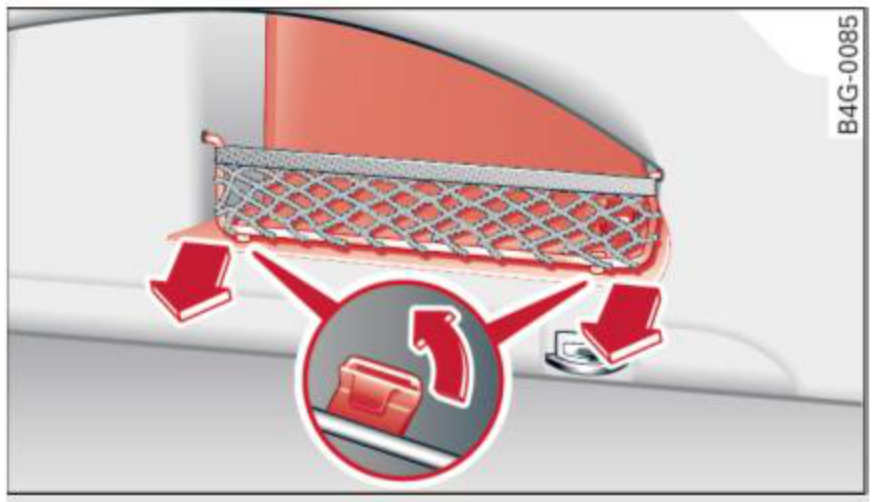


Fig. 176 Right side trim in the luggage compartment: removing the trim

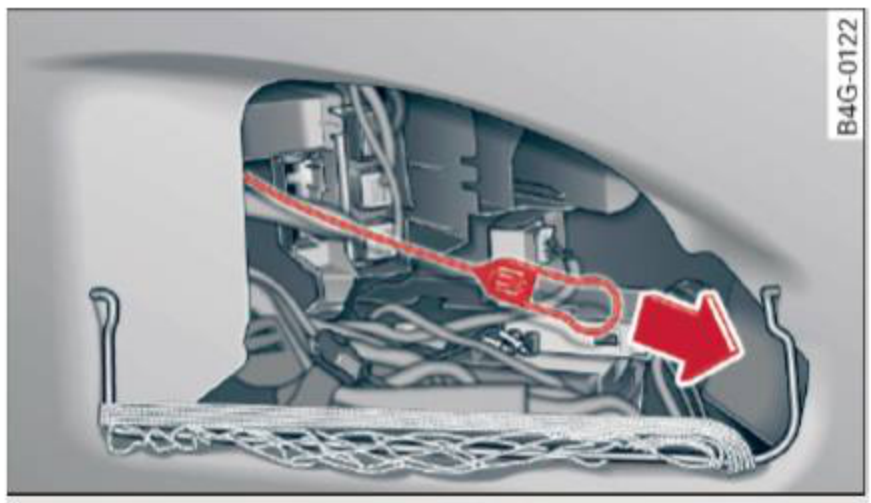


Fig. 177 Luggage compartment: fuel filler door emergency release

The emergency opening mechanism is located behind the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment.

Removing the side trim

- ▸ To remove the right side trim, first remove the retainer from the mounts ⇨ *fig. 176*.
- ▸ Turn both locking mechanisms 90° to the left using a coin or a similar object and remove the locking mechanisms.
- ▸ Tilt the retainer upward and pull the trim out. Lay the trim down on its side, because there is an electrical wire for the socket* on the back.

Fuel filler door emergency release

- ▸ Loosen the strap from its bracket and pull on it ⇨ *fig. 177* ⇨ (!). The filler door is released.
- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 190, fig. 174*.

(!) Note

Only pull on the loop until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. Otherwise you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

Emissions control system

Catalytic converter

The vehicle may only be driven with unleaded gasoline, otherwise the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

- – Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
- – Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the emissions control system could start a fire.
- – Do not apply underbody protectant in the exhaust system area, because this increases the risk of fire.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

The On-Board Diagnostic System monitors the engine and transmission components that influence emissions.



Fig. 178 Footwell on left side of the vehicle: connection port for the On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

On-Board Diagnostic System

Engine data can be read out using a special test device at the On-Board Diagnostic System connection port ⇨ *fig. 178*.

Indicator light

If the indicator light blinks or turns on, there is a malfunction that is causing poor emissions quality and that could damage the catalytic converter.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

The indicator light can also turn on if the fuel filler cap is not closed correctly ⇨ *page 190*.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the connection port for the On-Board Diagnostic System can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries.

– Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the engine data.

Engine compartment

Working in the engine compartment

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area in the vehicle. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Turn the engine off.
– Switch the ignition off.
– Set the parking brake.
– Select the P selector lever position.
– Let the engine cool down.
– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
– Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of personal injury.
– Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is warm. The cooling system is under pressure.
– To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a large cloth when opening.
– Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
– If tests need to be performed with the engine running, there is additional danger due to moving components (such as the ribbed ▶

belt, alternator and radiator fan) and from the high-voltage ignition system.
- Do not under any circumstances give gas inadvertently (for example, by hand from the engine compartment) if the vehicle is stationary but the engine is running and a gear is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
- Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near open flames.
  - Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby.
- All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and injury, never touch the following components when the engine is running or is being started:
  - Ignition cable
  - Other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system
- If you must check or perform work on the engine while it is running:
  - Set the parking brake and place the selector lever in the P (park) position first.
  - Always proceed with extreme caution so that clothing, jewelry or long hair do not become caught in the radiator fan, fan belt or other moving components or do not come into contact with hot components. Tie back long hair before beginning work and do not wear clothing that can hang down into the engine.
- Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to mix the fluids up. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening/closing the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.

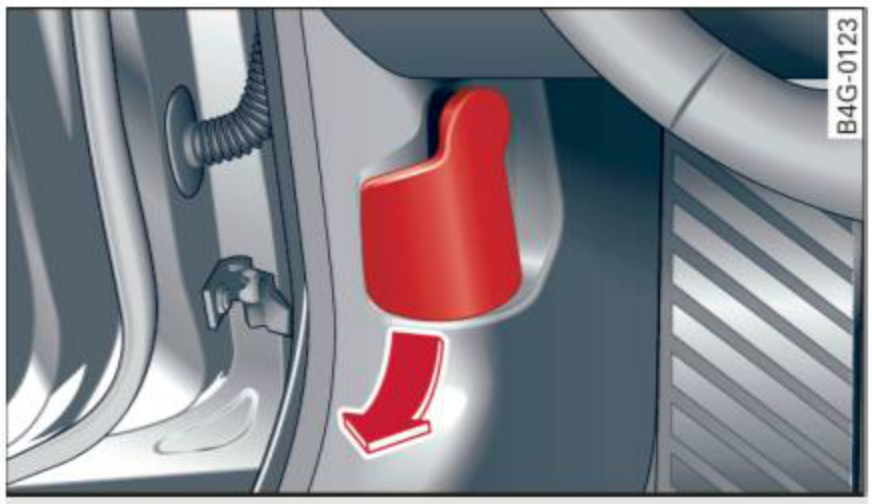


Fig. 179 Driver footwell: release lever

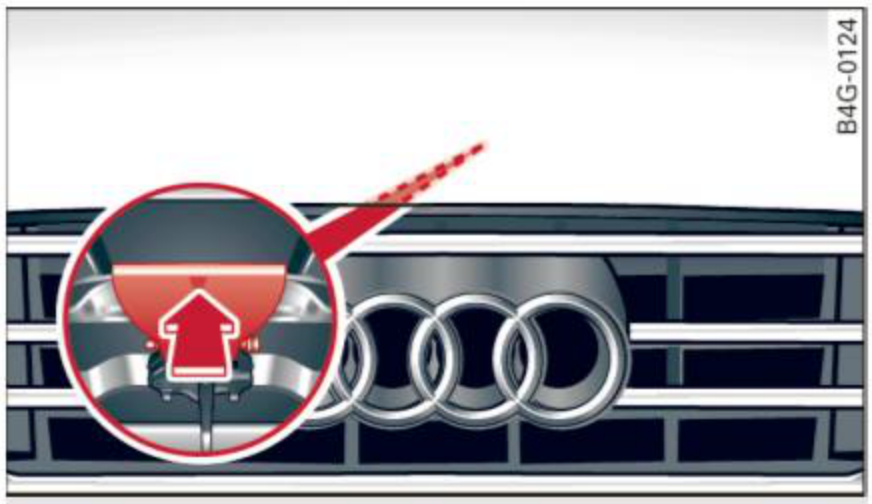


Fig. 180 Rocker switch under the hood

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the hood

- ▸ With the driver's door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 179*.
- ▸ Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the rocker switch under the hood upward ⇨ *fig. 180*. This releases the catch.
- ▸ Open the hood.

Closing the hood

- ▸ Push the hood down until you override the force of the strut.
- ▸ Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- – Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
- – For safety reasons, the hood must always be closed securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.
- – If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

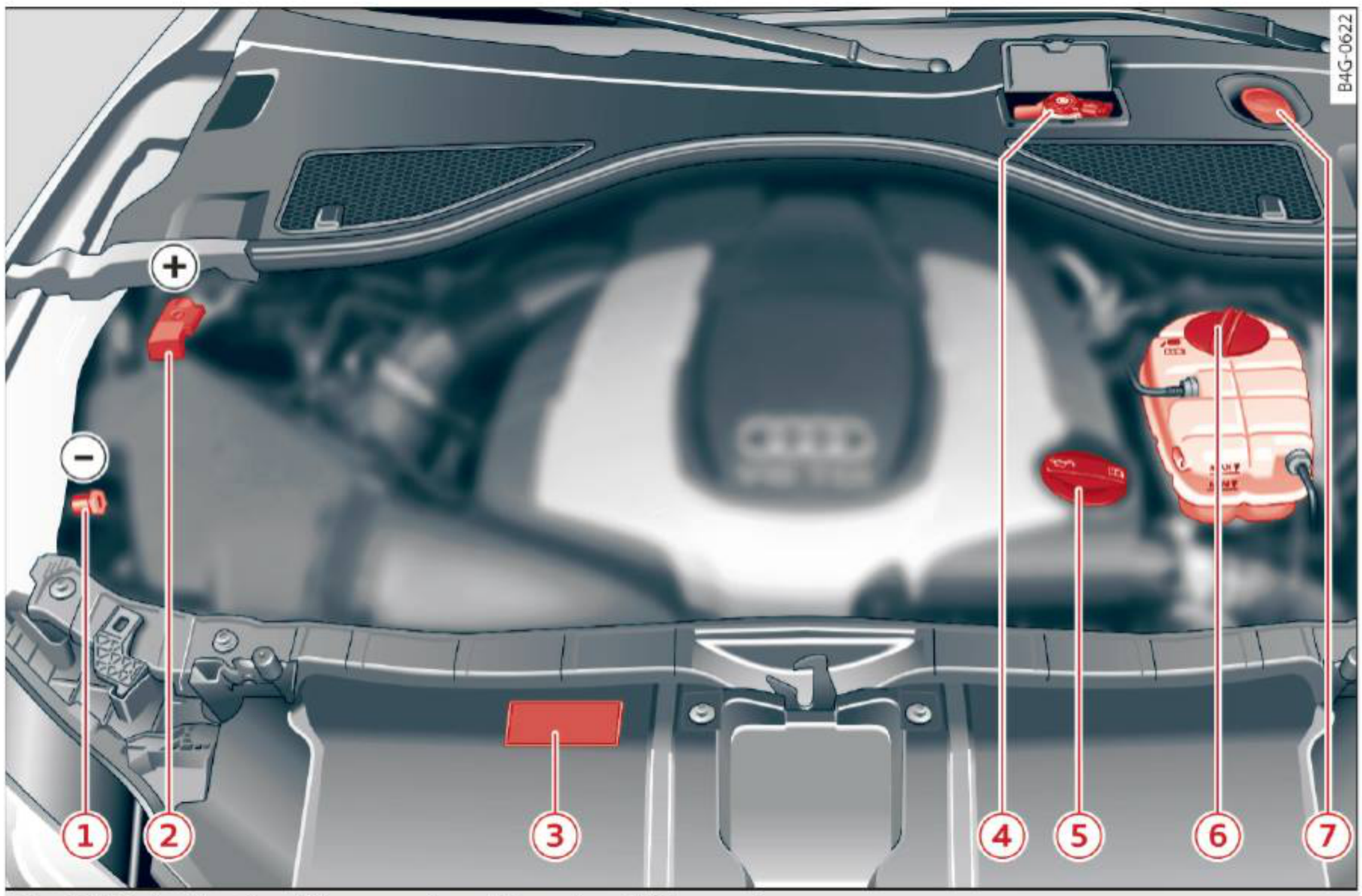


Fig. 181 Typical location of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening

① Jump start point (-) with hex head screw ⇨ *page 202*, ⇨ *page 247*

② Jump start point (+) under the cover ⇨ *page 202*, ⇨ *page 247*

③ Engine oil label* with VW standard ⇨ *page 196*

④ Brake fluid reservoir (⇨) ⇨ *page 201*

⑤ Engine oil filler opening (⇨) ⇨ *page 198*

⑥ Coolant reservoir (⇨) ⇨ *page 200*

⑦ Washer fluid reservoir (⇨) ⇨ *page 203*

The engine oil filler opening ⑤ may be located in a different area depending on the specific engine.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low

If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that is listed on the sticker. The sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 196, fig. 181*.

If the recommended engine oil is not available, **in an emergency** you may add a maximum of 1 quart (1 liter) of ACEA C3 or API SN engine oil **one time** until the next oil change.

For more information on the correct engine oil for your vehicle, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have the oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility. ▶

Audi recommends

Castrol EDGE Professional

Audi recommends using the Long Life high-performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil level can be checked in the Infotainment system

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

- ▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- ▸ Switch only the ignition back on.
- ▸ Wait approximately two minutes.
- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & control** > **Oil level**.
- ▸ Read the oil level in the Infotainment system. Add engine oil if the bar in the oil level indicator is just before “min” ⇨ *page 198*.

Note

The engine oil level must not be under the “min” marking, as this will increase the risk of engine damage.

Tips

The oil level indicator in the display is only an informational display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil and close the hood. The current oil level is displayed in the Infotainment system the next time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. In RS models, the oil consumption may be up to 1 qt/600 mi (0.8 L/1,000 km). Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). Because of this, the engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

– In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.
– Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.
– With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to checking the oil level regularly and frequently.
– If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult an authorized Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. An authorized Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.
– You can find information on engine oil and engine oil capacities for the USA at www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance, or for Canada at www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/customer-area/care-and-maintenance/audi-service-schedules.html, or call 800-822-2834.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 182 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

- ▸ Turn the engine off.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 195*.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 182*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 196*.
- ▸ Close the engine oil filler opening cap.
- ▸ Close the engine compartment lid.
- ▸ Restart the ignition after two minutes and read the current oil level in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 197, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Add more oil if necessary.

WARNING

- When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
- You must seal the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
- Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.
- Store the engine oil securely in the original container.

Note

- If the message **Oil level is too full. Please reduce oil level.** appears, there is too much oil in the engine and there is a risk of catalytic converter and engine damage. Do not start the engine. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have excess engine oil extracted if necessary.
- Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
- Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Audi oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage.
- Do not mix any additional lubricants into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is not covered by the warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
- Pay attention to legal requirements when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly ▶

stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:

- Wear eye protection.
- To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
- When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
- Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
- Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
- Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored through the indicator light ⇨ *page 14*. However, we do recommend occasionally checking the coolant level manually.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives. These additives may be mixed with each other.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	**TL 774 L**
G12++	TL 774 G
G13	TL 774 J

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine. ▶

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

– Before the start of winter, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
– If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.

Adding coolant



Fig. 183 Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 193, Working in the engine compartment*.

Checking the engine coolant level

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Read the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 196, fig. 181*. The coolant level must be between the MIN and MAX markings when the engine in cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the MAX marking.

Adding coolant

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- Let the engine cool down.
- Place a cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap and unscrew the cap counterclockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 199* up to the MAX marking.
- Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- Close the cap securely.

Coolant loss usually indicates there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, a loss can come from the coolant boiling through overheating and being pushed out of the cooling system.

WARNING

– The cooling system is under pressure. Do not open the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. This increases the risk of burns.
– The coolant additive and the coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, keep the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.

Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Brake fluid



Fig. 184 Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

Checking the brake fluid level

▸ Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 196, fig. 181*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

Changing the brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed regularly by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

– If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This would impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
– To ensure the brake system functions correctly, only use brake fluids that comply with VW standard 501 14 or FMVSS-116 DOT 4.

Note

– If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
– Do not get any brake fluid on the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

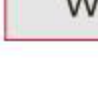
Battery

General warnings about batteries

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc., should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Detailed warnings for the vehicle battery:

	Wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Wear protective gloves and eye protection.
	Fire, sparks, open flame and smoking are forbidden.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.
	Keep children away from battery acid and batteries.

⚠ WARNING

All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling. ▸

Note

If the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time, protect it against the cold so that it will not be destroyed by "freezing" ⇨ *page 202*.

Vehicle battery

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time ⇨ *page 126*. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the vehicle battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the vehicle battery. The vehicle battery must be charged every month to reduce the risk of this happening ⇨ *page 202*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places higher demands on the vehicle battery. This results in reduced starting ability. Have the vehicle battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before the cold time of year.

Charging the vehicle battery

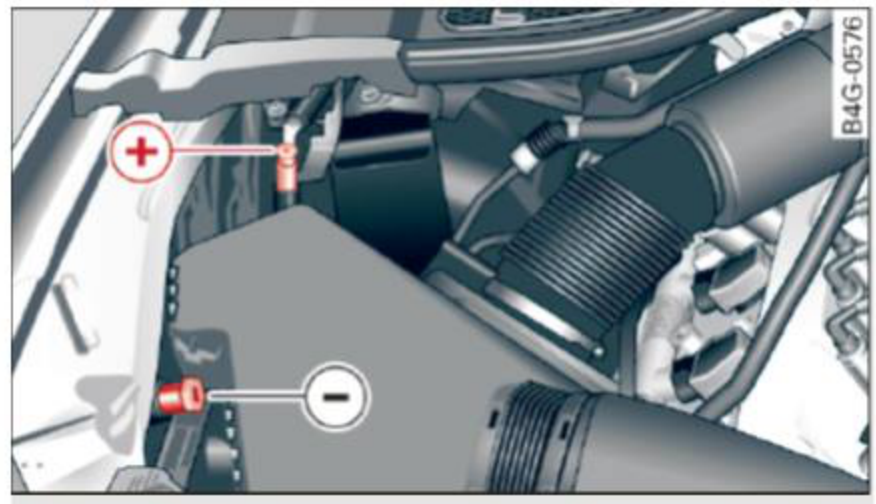


Fig. 185 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 30 amps/14.8 Volts**. The vehicle battery cables remain connected.

- ▸ Read the warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General warnings about batteries on page 201* and ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 195*.
- ▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 185*.
- ▸ Clamp the charger terminal clamps to the jump start pins according to the instructions. (pin under the red cover = "positive", pin with hexagonal head = "negative").
- ▸ Insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- ▸ At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- ▸ Remove the charger terminal clamps.
- ▸ Close the red cover on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 195*.

WARNING

– A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the vehicle battery in well-ventilated areas.
– A drained vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 ºF (0 ºC). A frozen or thawed vehicle battery must not be charged and must not be used anymore. The battery housing can crack and battery acid can leak out if ice forms, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an ▸

authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

Tips

– Only charge the vehicle battery through the connections in the engine compartment.
– Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the vehicle battery.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 186 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 196, fig. 181*. The reservoir capacity can be found in ⇨ *page 254*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Note

– The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions in the respective climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
– Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
– Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

– **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after a certain distance driven, a message appears in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on/off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Car menu. To do this, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & control** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

To reset the indicator, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & control** > **Service intervals**. Turn the control knob downward to **Reset oil change interval** and press the control knob.

Note

– Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
– Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if ▶

the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.
– Calculating the time to the next oil change is interrupted when the vehicle battery is disconnected ⇨ *page 232*.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

- ▸Check your tires regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks and bulges). Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ▸If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- ▸Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- ▸Protect your tires from oil, grease and fuel.
- ▸Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- ▸Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

WARNING

–Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.

–Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

4G8012721BD

Tire designations

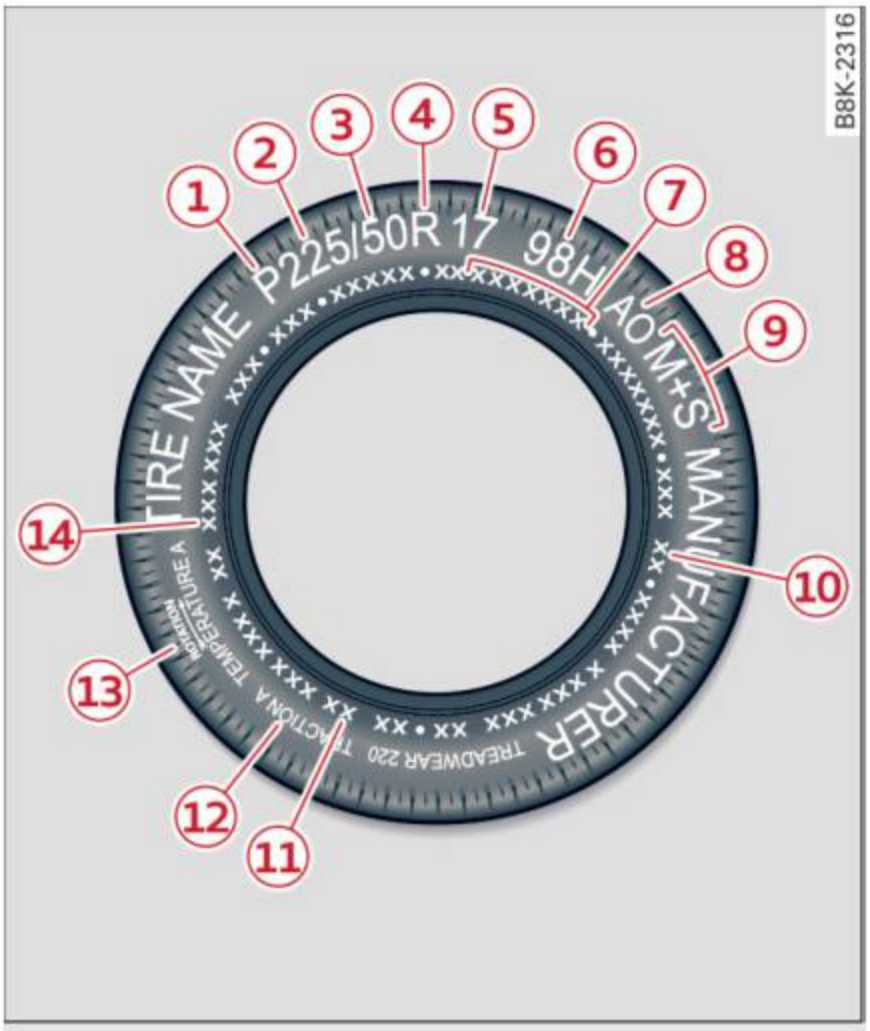


Fig. 187 Tire designations on the sidewall

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

"P" indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. "T" indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

R indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed. Also see ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 205*.

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a)]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a)]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR". ▶

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2217 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2017.

⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation “AO” have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

“M/S” or “M+S” indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 221*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 241*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

4G8012721BD

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall. ▶

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords. ▶

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 208, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 206*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the ▸

maximum permissible road speeds. See also ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 205*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 214, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2217 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2017. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used ▶

by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 217*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 215, fig. 190* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 217* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- New tires do not yet have the optimum gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- Only use tires with the same design, size (rolling circumference), and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- Applies to: RS models: only use tires with the same design, size (rolling circumference), and the same tread pattern on all four wheels.
- Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time. ▶

- Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire/rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

Because the spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle (such as winter tires or wide tires), only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive: all four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different wheel speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not use steel rims that are 17 inches or larger. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles - in some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.
- Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident. ▶

–Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.
–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.
–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear/damage



Fig. 188 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration and heavy braking increase tire wear.
–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 188*. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠. ▶

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in your country.

Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 241*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or different tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can increase the risk of an accident because it has a negative effect on handling, driving through curves, and braking, and because it increases the risk of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles.

Tire pressure



Fig. 189 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

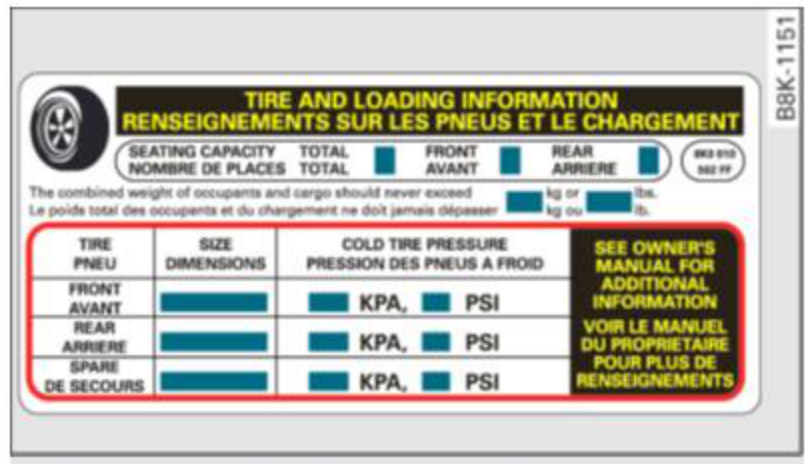


Fig. 190 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted in the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 189*, ⇨ *fig. 190*. ▶

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 217*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking/correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Check the label ⇨ *fig. 190* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Store the new tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 224* or ⇨ *page 226*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 218, Tires and vehicle load limits*.

–The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

–Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are differences between this information and the tire pressures specified on the label on the driver's side B-pillar, always follow the specification on the B-pillar label ⇨ *page 215, fig. 189*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed.

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2/3* people)[a]				Maximum load			
		front		rear		front		rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
A7: 3.0L 6 cylinders	**235/55 R17 99Y**	32	220	29	200	35	240	38	260
	255/45 R18 99H	32	220	29	200	35	240	38	260
	255/45 R18 99Y	32	220	29	200	35	240	38	260
	255/40 R19 100H	35	240	32	220	38	260	41	280
	255/40 R19 100Y	36	250	32	220	38	260	41	280
	265/35 R20 99H	35	240	32	220	38	260	41	280
	265/35 R20 99Y	36	250	32	220	38	260	41	280
	275/30 R21 98Y	38	260	33	230	39	270	41	280
S7: 4.0L 8-cylinder	**265/35 R20 99Y**	41	280	35	240	44	300	44	300
	255/40 R19 100Y	39	270	33	230	42	290	42	290
	275/30 R21 98Y	41	280	35	240	44	300	44	300
RS 7 Sportback: 4.0 L 8-cylinder	**275/35 ZR20 102Y**	36	250	30	210	39	270	39	270
	275/30 ZR21 98Y	41	280	38	260	45	310	45	310
RS 7 Sportback performance: 4.0 L 8-cylinder	**275/30 ZR21 98Y**	46	320	44	300	51	350	51	350

a) **Vehicles with 4 seating positions:** two people in the front, **Vehicles with 5 seating positions:** two people in the front, one person in the rear ▶

4G8012721BD

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 215* and load limits ⇨ *page 218*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating ▸

are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 215, fig. 189*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 215, fig. 189*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will ▶

be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▸ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 206, fig. 187*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 237, After changing a wheel*.

- Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
- Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

- ▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
- ▸ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
- ▸ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 205*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
- ▸ Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 215*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread. ▶

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⛄ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains not only improve the driving in winter road conditions, but also the braking.

- ▸ Only install snow chains on the front wheels. This applies also to vehicles with all wheel drive*.
- ▸ Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- ▸ Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Note the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Snow chains can damage the rims/wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.

– Using snow chains that add more than 0.4 inch (10.5 mm) of height can severely damage the wheel housings and other vehicle components.

– Do not install and use snow chains if there is a malfunction in the air suspension*, because the vehicle height will be very low. If you drive with snow chains anyway, the wheel housings and other vehicle components can be severely damaged.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be useful to switch on sport mode ⇨ *page 121*.

Low-profile tires

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tires

Compared to other tire/rim combinations, low-profile tires offer a wider tread surface and a larger rim diameter with shorter tire sidewalls. This results in an agile driving style. However, it may reduce the level of comfort and increase road noise when driving on roads in poor condition.

Low-profile tires can become damaged more quickly than standard tires when driving over large bumps, potholes, manhole covers and curbs. Therefore, it is particularly important to maintain the correct tire pressure ⇨ *page 215*.

To reduce the risk of damage to the tires and rims, drive very carefully on poor roads.

Check your wheels regularly every 2,000 mi (3,000 km) for damage. For example, check for bulges/cracks on the tires or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy impact or damage, have the tires and rims inspected or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Low-profile tires can wear out faster than standard tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear ▶

– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 206, fig. 187*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

⚠ WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

(!) General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a ▶

significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator appears

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 191 Instrument cluster: indicator light with message

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an indicator light (!) and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the Infotainment system again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 224*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 215, fig. 190*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

- the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low
- the tire has structural damage
- the tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 224*
- the spare tire* is installed ▶

Indicator lights

(!) – loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠. Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 224*.

TPMS (**T**ire **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tire pressure: System malfunction!**. If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 224*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed.

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tire pressure monitoring system in your Audi was calibrated with "Audi Original Tires" ⇨ *page 212*. Using these tires is recommended.

Storing tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the Infotainment system.

- Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 215*.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Service & control** > **Tire pressure monitor** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Tire pressure monitoring system

(!) General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. ▶

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors the pressure in the four tires when driving.

The system uses sensors that measure the temperature and pressure in the tires. The data is sent from these sensors to the control module by radio frequency.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System shows the current pressures and temperatures of the tires in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 226*. It also compares the current tire pressures with the stored tire pressures and gives a warning in the driver information system if the tire pressure is different from what is stored ⇨ *page 226*.

The system does not detect if the stored tire pressures match the recommended tire pressures. You must store the tire pressures again ⇨ *page 226*:

– every time the tire pressures change, for example when the load in the vehicle changes,
– after replacing a tire, or
– if wheels with new wheel sensors are used.

WARNING

– The tire pressure monitoring system assists the driver in monitoring tire pressures. The driver is responsible for having the tires inflated to the correct pressure.
– Do not change the tire pressure when the temperature of the tire is extremely high. This could result in serious damage to the tire and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
– A tire with low pressure flexes more. This heats the tire up too much. This could cause the tread to separate and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
– The tire pressure monitoring system does not warn about damage or defects in the tire construction that could cause the tire to burst, for example. Inspect your tires regularly.

Tips

– If tires are replaced, the sensors/valves do not need to be removed or replaced. Just replaced the valve stem and, if necessary, the valve and the wheel electronics. If you have questions, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– An incorrect display or a malfunction in the tire pressure monitoring system can occur after using the tire mobility kit. Have the sensors replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 258*.

Displaying tire pressures/temperatures

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- Select: the CAR function button > **Car systems** > **Service & control** > **Tire pressure monitor** > **Display tire pressure**.

The current tire pressures are shown in green and yellow numbers in the Infotainment system:

– **Green:** the current tire pressure and the specified tire pressure are approximately the same.
– **Yellow:** the current tire pressure is too low compared to the specified tire pressure.

The specified tire pressure is the last tire pressure that was stored ⇨ *page 226*.

Note that the tire pressure also depends on the temperature of the tire. The tire pressure increases as the engine becomes warmer while driving.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 225*.

Tips

The tire pressure or temperature are not displayed in adaptation mode. Dashes **--.--** are shown in place of the pressure and temperature.

(!) Tire pressure loss

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

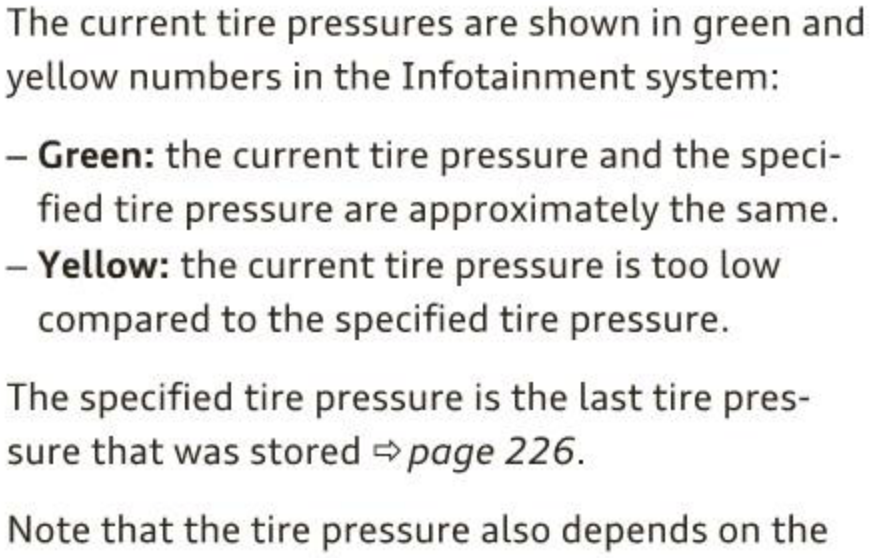


Fig. 192 Display: indicator light with a message

If the (!) indicator light turns on, the pressure in at least one tire is too low or new sensors were not adapted:

(!) indicator lights turns on after turning the ignition on

The tire pressure is too low compared to the specified pressure.

- Check and store the tire pressure(s) the next time it is possible ⇨ *page 226*.

(!) indicator light turns on while driving

Wheels with new sensors were not adapted or the tire pressure has reached a critical level compared to the specified pressure.

- Avoid unnecessary steering and braking maneuvers.
- Adapt your driving style to the situation.
- Stop as soon as possible and check the tire(s).
- If it is possible to continue driving, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately and have your tire(s) repaired or replaced.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 225*.

Storing new tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

Correctly stored tire pressure specifications are necessary for reliable tire pressure monitoring.

- Check the tire pressures in all wheels.
- Correct the tire pressure if necessary. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 215, fig. 190*. Only correct the pressure in tires whose temperature is approximately the same as the ambient temperature. If the temperature of the tire is higher than the ambient air temperature, the tire pressure must be increased approximately 3 PSI (0,2 bar) above the value on the sticker.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Select: CAR function button > **Car systems** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure**. ▶

After storing, the tire pressure monitoring system measures the current tire pressures and stores them as the new specified pressures.

► If the changed tire pressures are not displayed in the Infotainment system, drive the vehicle for approximately 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels is received again.

During this adaptation phase, **--.--** is displayed for the pressure and temperature and the tire pressure monitoring system is only partially available. It only provides a warning if one or more tire pressures is below the minimum permitted specified pressure. If this is the case, the (!) indicator light appears with a message.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 225*.

Malfunctions

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is not available, the TPMS indicator light appears in the driver information system. The (!) indicator light also blinks for approximately one minutes each time the ignition is switched on. The tire pressure monitoring system cannot be selected in the Infotainment system. The following are examples of situations that could cause a malfunction:

– If the message appears at the end of the adaptation phase, the system cannot detect the wheels installed on the vehicle. This may result from one or more wheels being installed without wheel sensors or with incompatible wheel sensors.
– A wheel sensor or another component has failed.
– Using snow chains can affect the function of the system because of the shielding effect of the chains.
– The tire pressure monitoring system is not available due to a malfunction.
– Transmitters with the same frequency, such as headphones or remote-controlled devices, may cause a temporary system malfunction due to the strong electromagnetic field.

The TPMS indicator light turns off once the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is available again. If you cannot correct the malfunction and the TPMS indicator light stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

4G8012721BD

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Preferably purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products.
- Do not dispose of leftover cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits remain on the vehicle, the more the surface may be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at the seals on the side windows, doors, lids or the sunroof* or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car washes

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and roof* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Applies to: RS models: only use car washes where the vehicle remains stationary and the washing equipment moves around the vehicle when washing and drying. Car washes that move the vehicle through the car wash using a chain are not recommended.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working down using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To avoid damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To avoid damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois. ▶

WARNING

- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator to reduce the risk of accidents.
- To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
- After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

Note

- If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must retract the rear spoiler if necessary, and fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges or similar items.
- Matte finish painted vehicle components:
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  - Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  - Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle parts painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner, ⇨ *page 46*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary

Component	Situation	Solution
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 253*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 228*

[a] Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], allow to dry before letting them retract

Component	Situation	Solution
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather Dried stains: grease dissolving spray
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use specially-colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as plastic parts

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

Note

– **Headlights/tail lights**
  – Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use any cleaning product that contains alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
– **Wheels**
  – Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  – Damage to the protective layer on the rims such as stone chips or scratches must be repaired immediately.
– **Camera lenses**
  – Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  – Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
– **Door windows**
  – Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To ▶

avoid scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
- Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
- To avoid damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.

– **Decorative parts/trim**
- Never use chrome care or cleaning products.

– **Paint**
- To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
- To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
- Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately - these could damage the paint.

– **Displays**
- To avoid scratches, do not use dry cleaning methods on displays.

– **Controls**
- Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.

– **Safety belts**
- Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
- Never clean safety belts or their components chemically or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
- If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– **Textiles/artificial leather/Alcantara**
- Never treat artificial leather/Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remove or similar products.
- Have a specialist remove stubborn stains to prevent damage.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
- Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**
- Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
- Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

- Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
- Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.

Placing your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a longer period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 201*.

Emergency assistance

General information

- ▸ Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. It you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Switch the emergency flashers on.
- ▸ Set up the warning triangle ⇨ *page 233*.
- ▸ Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of other drivers.

Equipment

Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle



Fig. 193 Luggage compartment lid: warning triangle

The warning triangle placed in the vehicle at the factory is located in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Turn the twist lock ⇨ *fig. 193* and pull the cover downward to open the cover.
- ▸ Remove the warning triangle from its holder.

The luggage compartment lid is only designed to hold the warning triangle offered by the Audi Genuine Accessories program.

Vehicle tool kit

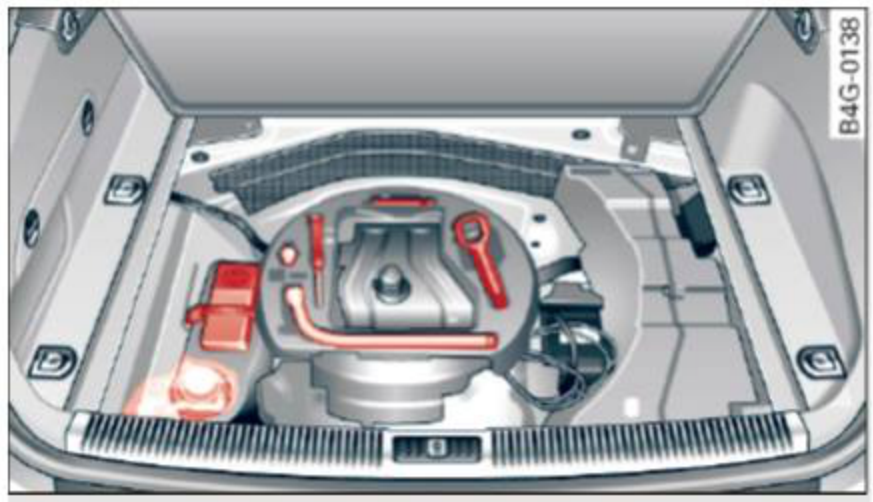


Fig. 194 Luggage compartment: vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit and compressor

The vehicle tool kit, vehicle jack*, tire mobility kit* and compressor are stored in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor by the plastic handle.
- ▸ Turn the handle counter-clockwise and remove the cover or the spare tire*.

WARNING

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

– Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
– The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
– Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
– Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.

Tips

The vehicle jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

4G8012721BD

Tire mobility kit

Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 233, General information*.
- ▸ Select the P selector lever position.
- ▸ Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 234*.

Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit



Fig. 195 Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the spare tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire mobility kit can be used at temperatures as low as -4 °F (-20 °C).

The tire mobility kit may not be used:

– If the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) ① ⇨ *fig. 195*.
– if the rim is damaged ②
– if you drove with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③

See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance in these situations.

⚠ WARNING

– Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily.
– The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothes.
– If tire sealant gets in your eyes or on your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
– Do not inhale the fumes.
– If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
– Change your clothes immediately if they get tire sealant on them.
– If an allergic reaction occurs, seek immediate medical attention.
– Keep the tire sealant away from children.
– In vehicles with a tire pressure monitoring system*, using tire sealant can results in an incorrect display or a system malfunction. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
– Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor*.
– Obey all laws.

Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

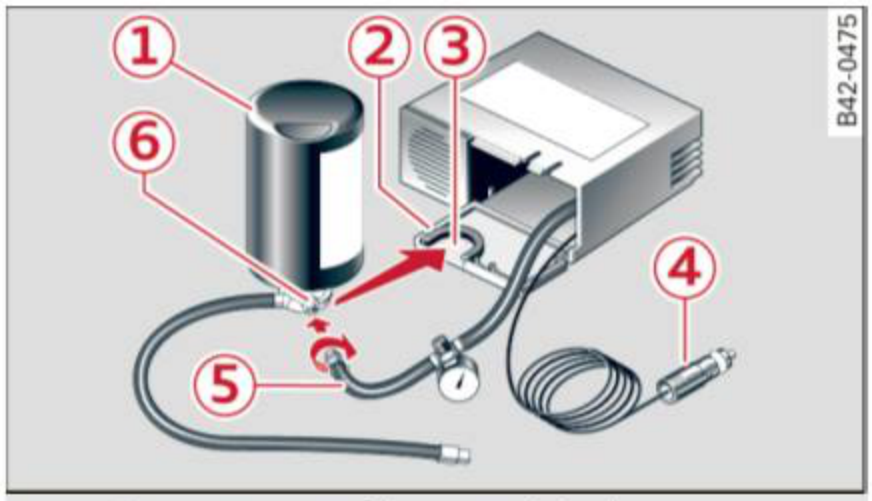


Fig. 196 Components of the tire mobility kit

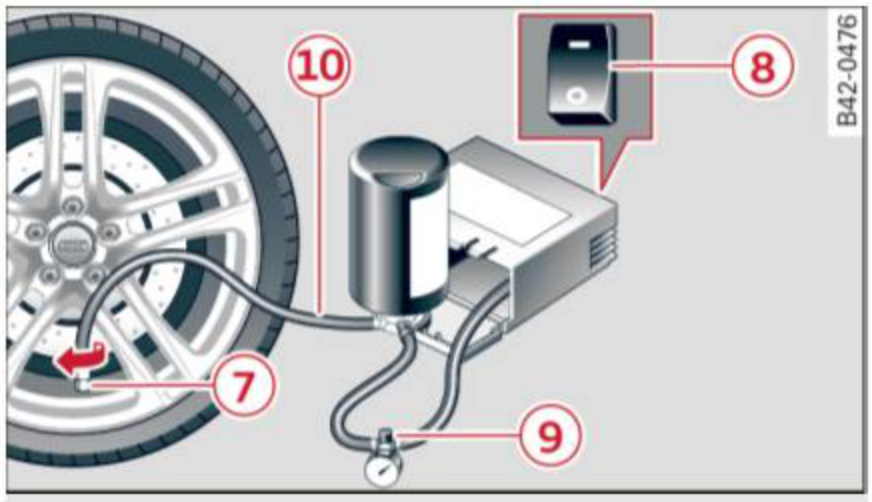


Fig. 197 Tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 233*.

Installing the tire mobility kit

- ▸ Open the cover (2) on the compressor ⇨ *fig. 196*.
- ▸ Remove the connector (4) and pressure hose (5) with pressure gauge from the housing.
- ▸ Install the compressor pressure hose (5) onto the flange (6) on the tire sealant bottle (1).
- ▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening (3) on the compressor cover.
- ▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
- ▸ Install the filler hose (10) on the valve (7) ⇨ *fig. 197*.
- ▸ Connect the plug (4) ⇨ *fig. 196* to an outlet in the vehicle.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on.

Inflating a tire

- ▸ Move the switch (8) ⇨ *fig. 197* on the compressor into position **I**.
- ▸ Inflate the tire between 29 PSI and 36 PSI (2.0 and 2.5 bar) and read the tire pressure on the gauge.
- ▸ If this tire pressure is not reached, remove the filler hose. Drive slowly approximately 33 feet (10 m) forward or in reverse so that the sealant can be distributed in the tire. Pump up the tire again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
– If a tire pressure of 29 psi (2.0 bar) cannot be reached after inflating for six minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
– If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

Do not operate the compressor for more than six minutes continuously, or it can overheat. Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Adhere the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- ▸ If the tire pressure is lower than 19 PSI (1.3 bar), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

WARNING

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
– Avoid hard acceleration, braking sharply, and fast cornering.
– The vehicle may become more difficult to control.

– If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

Tips

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

Replacing wheels

Before changing a wheel

Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.

- ▸ After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move **selector lever to position P** ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- ▸ Take the **jack** and the **spare tire*** out of the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 233*.

WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

– If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.

– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.

– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the front and back of the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in P (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.

– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.

– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 134*.

Tips

Before changing the wheel, you must activate the jacking mode, so that the automatic controls for the Adaptive Air Suspension* do not make it more difficult to lift the vehicle with the jack ⇨ *page 238*.

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.

1. Activate the vehicle jack mode* ⇨ *page 238*.
2. Remove the **decorative wheel cover*** or the **wheel bolt caps***. For more details see also ⇨ *page 237, Decorative wheel covers* or ⇨ *page 237, Wheels with wheel bolt caps*.
3. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 238*.
4. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇨ *page 238*.
5. **Raise** the car with the jack ⇨ *page 238*.
6. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install **the spare** ⇨ *page 240*.
7. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
8. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
9. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇨ *page 238*.
10. Replace the decorative **wheel cover*** or the **wheel bolt caps***.
11. Deactivate the vehicle jack mode* in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** ▶

control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **Off**.

The vehicle jack mode* switches off automatically at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in Raising the vehicle on page 239* and ⇨ *page 241*.

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.

- ▸ Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 134*.
- ▸ Check the **tire pressure** on the spare wheel immediately after mounting it.
- ▸ As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 90 ft lbs (120 Nm).
- ▸ Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

Tips

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.
– After changing a wheel, the tire pressure in all four tires must be checked/corrected and the tire pressure monitoring indicator must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 224*, ⇨ *page 226*.

Decorative wheel covers

Applies to: vehicles with decorative wheel covers

The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.



Fig. 198 Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel cover

Removing

- ▸ Insert the **hook** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) in the hole in the wheel hub cover.
- ▸ Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇨ *fig. 198*.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps

Applies to: vehicles with wheel bolts with caps

The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.



Fig. 199 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

Removing

- ▸ Push the **plastic clip** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) over the wheel bolt cap until the inner retainers on the clip align with the edge of the cover.
- ▸ Remove the cap with the **plastic clip** (vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 199*.

Refitting

- ▸ Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on.

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean.

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.



Fig. 200 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

Loosening

- ▸ Slide the **wheel wrench** onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 200*.

Tightening

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

WARNING

– Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.

– *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.

Tips

– Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

– If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

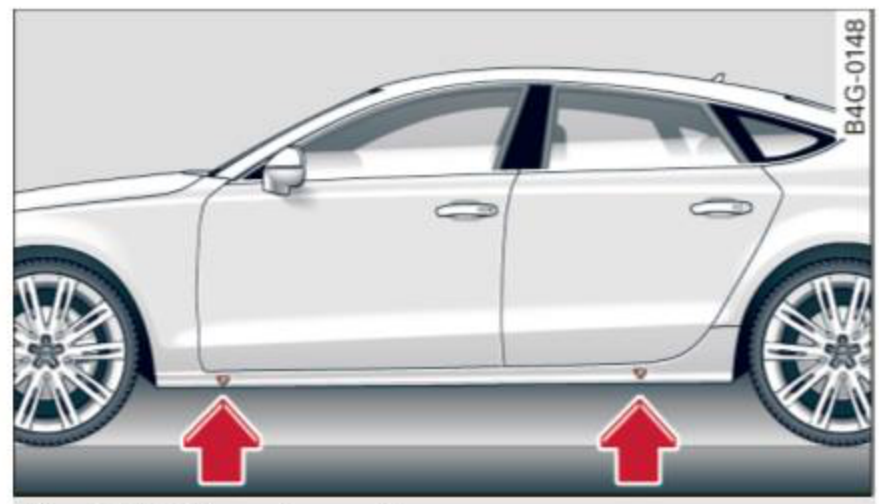


Fig. 201 Sill panels: markings

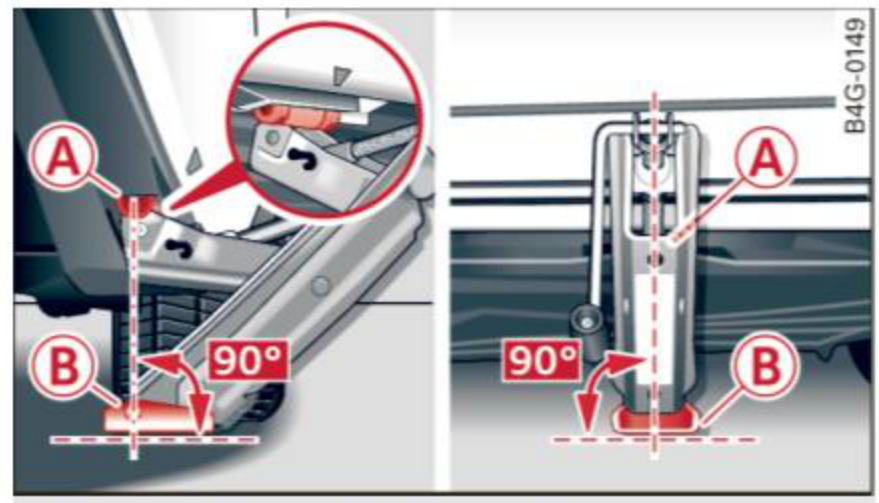


Fig. 202 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ▸ Activate the vehicle jack mode* in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **On**.
- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
- ▸ Move the **selector lever to position P**.
- ▸ Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 201*. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with a sill: Remove the cover from the sill before lifting the vehicle with a vehicle jack ⇨ *page 239*.
- ▸ Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 202* is located under the designated plastic mount ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ Ⓘ.

- ▸ Align the jack so that its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 202* engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base Ⓑ lies flat on the ground. The base Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.
- ▸ Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇨ ⚠.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *fig. 201*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ ⓘ.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
– To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.
– Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.

ⓘ Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

ⓘ Tips

The vehicle jack mode* switches off automatically at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h).

Removing and installing the sill extension cover

Applies to: vehicles with sill extension



Fig. 203 Sill: removing the cover

- ▸ Pull the cover down to remove it ⇨ *fig. 203*
- ▸ To install the cover, insert it in the mount and press it upward until it clicks into place. The cover must be flush with the surface of the sill extension.

ⓘ Tips

Some models may also have a cover for the rear vehicle lift point.

Taking the wheel off/installing the spare

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel.



Fig. 204 Changing a wheel: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts



Fig. 205 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

Removing the wheel

- Use the **hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle** to completely remove the topmost wheel bolt and set it aside on a *clean* surface ⇨ *fig. 204*.
- Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 205*[1)].
- Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

Putting on the spare wheel

- Lift the spare wheel and carefully slide it over the alignment pin to guide it in place ⇨ (!).
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.
- Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇨ *page 238*. Tighten them *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

(!) Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor/ceramic brake rotor* and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

(i) Tips

Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

– Pull the reversible blade from the screwdriver before you use the hexagonal socket in the handle to turn the wheel bolts.
– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 241*.
– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

1) Applies to vehicles with ceramic brake rotors*: Use a second alignment pin* (stored in the spare wheel well molding) for the lower hole, following the description for the first alignment pin.

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

- The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire.
- If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
- We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
- Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.
- **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

- If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 212, New tires or wheels*.
- Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
- In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
- Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 212, New tires or wheels* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

- **Check the tire pressure on the spare tire immediately after installation.**
- **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.**
- **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 90 ft lbs (120 Nm).**
- **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**

Spare tire

Space-saving spare tire

Applies to: vehicles with spare tire

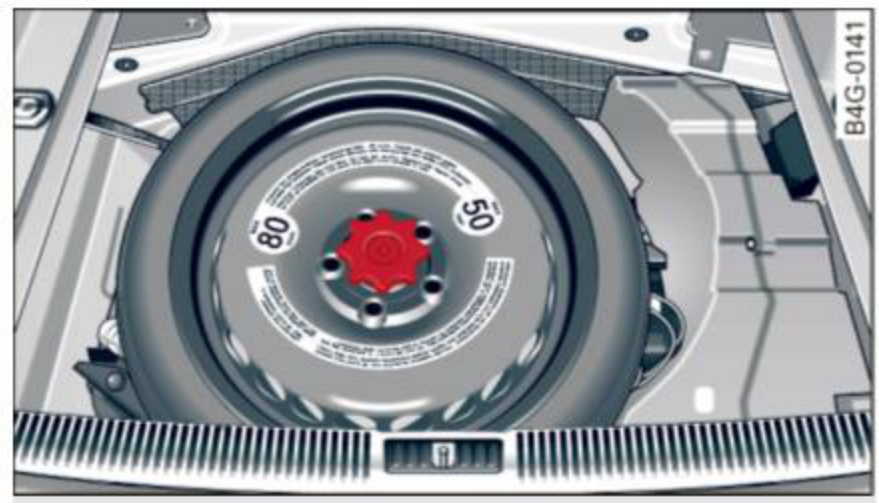


Fig. 206 Luggage compartment: space-saving spare tire

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and, if necessary, replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible. ▶

There are some restrictions on the use of the spare tire. The spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

Space-saving spare tire*

The tire pressure must be 61 PSI (4.2 bar).

Removing the spare tire

- ▸ Fold the cargo floor up to the rear bench seat.
- ▸ Turn the handwheel counter-clockwise and remove it.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire.

Snow chains

Using snow chains on the spare tire is not permitted due to technical reasons.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare tire in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

WARNING

- – After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as quickly as possible.
- – Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
- – Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- – Never drive using more than one spare tire, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- – Normal tires or winter tires must not be mounted on the spare tire rim.
- – Only use the collapsible spare tire in emergencies and drive very carefully, especially if it is more than 6 years old.

Fuses

Replacing fuses

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

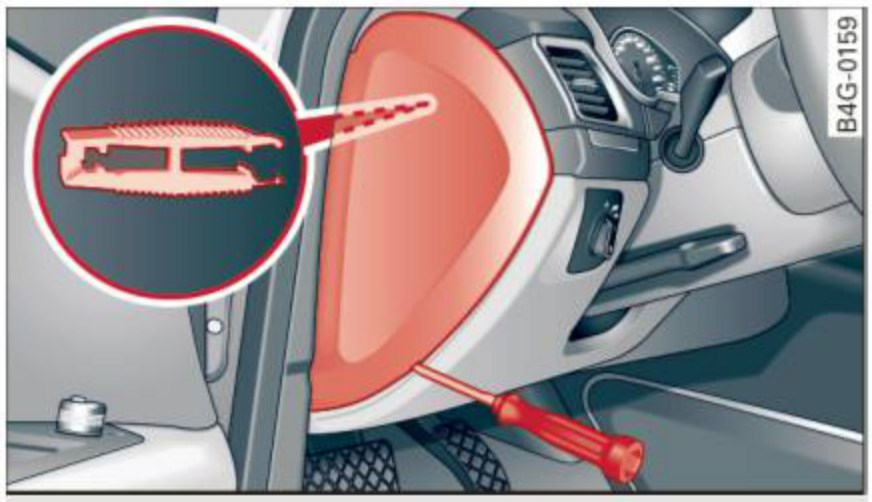


Fig. 207 Driver's side cockpit: cover

The fuses are located on front left and right of the cockpit and behind the trim on the right side of the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment.
- ▸ Remove the corresponding cover or remove the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 192*.
- ▸ Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary ⇨ *page 244, fig. 208*. You can dispose of the plastic clip.
- ▸ Remove the clamp from the rear side of the cover ⇨ *fig. 207*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.
- ▸ Install the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.

– Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

4G8012721BD

Driver side cockpit fuse assignment

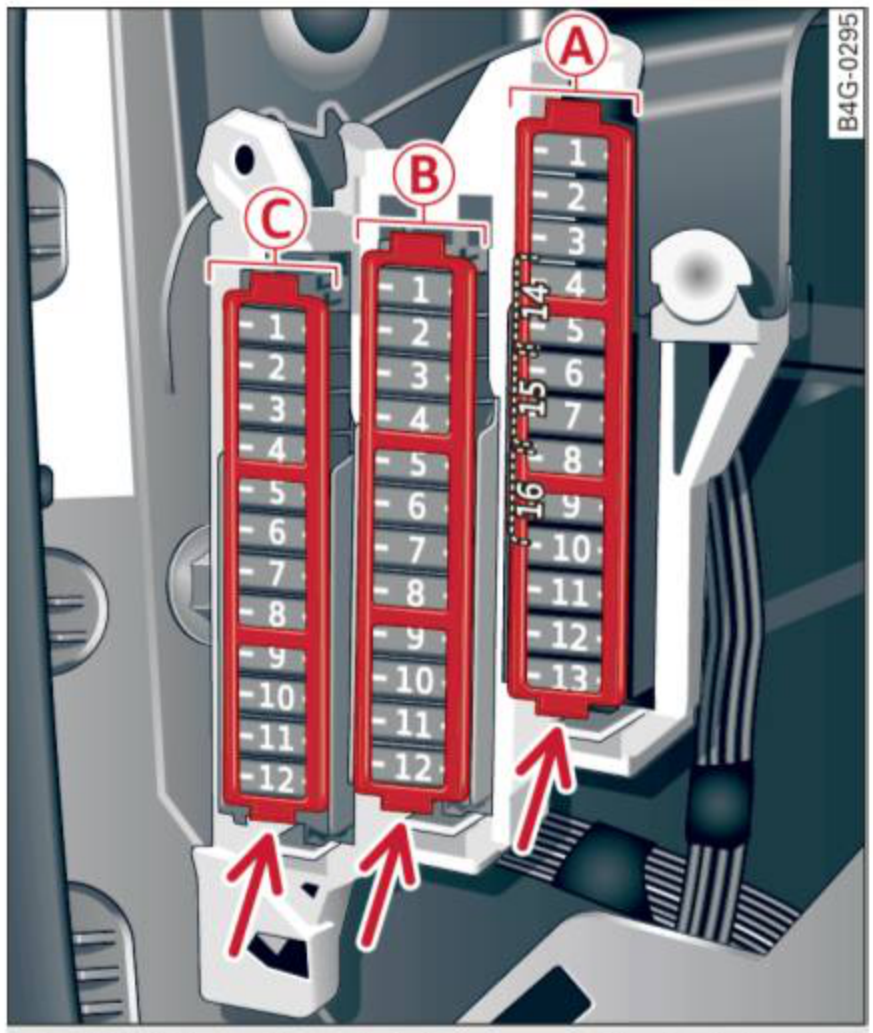


Fig. 208 Driver side cockpit: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Electromechanical power steering, trailer hitch, ionizer, switch strip, seat heating (rear), electromechanical parking brake
2	Horn, climate control system, Gateway, automatic dimming interior rearview mirror, On-Board Unit
4	Parking aid, headlight range adjustment
5	Dynamic steering, electronic stabilization control (ESC)
6	Headlights
7	Adaptive cruise control
8	Front passenger's seat sensors, airbag
9	Gateway
10	Engine sound, night vision assist, garage door opener (HomeLink), parking aid
11	Video camera image processing
12	Headlights
13	Steering column switch module

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
14	Terminal 15 (luggage compartment)
15	Starter

Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Infotainment system
2	Infotainment system
3	Front passenger's seat
5	Airbag, electronic stabilization control (ESC)
6	Anti-theft alarm system
7	Electromechanical parking brake
8	Interior lights
9	Windshield video camera heating, light/ rain sensor
10	Lumbar support (driver's seat)
11	Driver's seat
12	Electronic stabilization control
13	Horn
14	Headlights
15	Front seat heating
16	Dynamic steering

Fuse panel Ⓒ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Clutch pedal
2	Fuel pump
3	Brake light sensor
4	Engine acoustics
5	Rear door
6	Front door
7	Electronic stabilization control
8	Windshield wiper motor
9	Headlight washer system
10	Interior lighting, climate control system
11	Headlights
12	Sunroof

Front passenger side cockpit fuse assignment

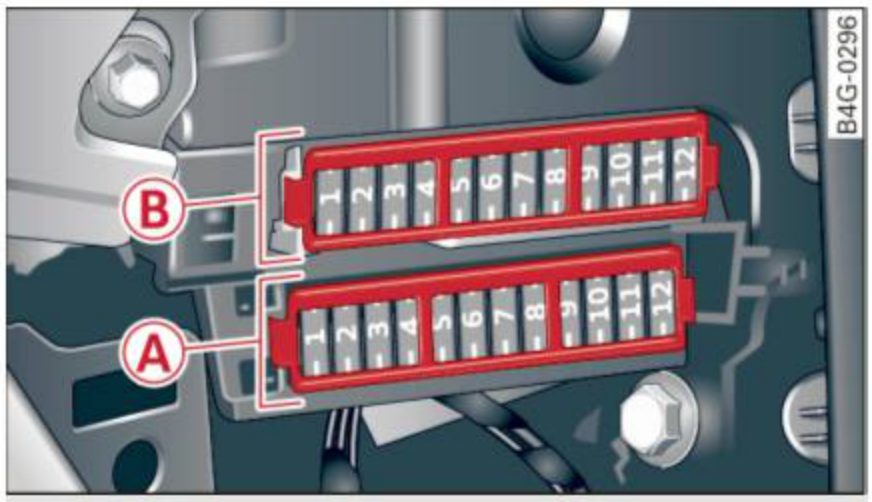


Fig. 209 Front passenger side cockpit: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel Ⓐ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Infotainment, CD changer
2	Infotainment (display)

Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Climate control system
2	Climate control system (blower)
3	Diagnostic interface
4	Electrical ignition lock
5	Electronic steering column lock
6	Steering column switch module
7	Power steering column adjustment
8	Light switch
9	Head-up display
10	Instrument cluster
11	Infotainment, DVD changer

Luggage compartment fuse assignment



Fig. 210 Luggage compartment: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Trailer hitch/220 volt socket
2	Trailer hitch/climatized cup holder
3	Trailer hitch/adjusting front passenger's seat from the rear
4	Electromechanical parking brake
5	Electromechanical parking brake
6	Front door (front passenger's side)
7	Rear exterior lighting
8	Central locking, closing aid
9	Seat heating (front)
11	Seat heating (rear), climate control system
12	Trailer hitch

Fuse panel Ⓑ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Left safety belt tensioner
2	Right safety belt tensioner
3	Fuel pump
4	Engine mount (gasoline engine)
5	Sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid
6	Air suspension, adaptive dampers
7	Rear door (front passenger's side)
8	Tail lights
9	Luggage compartment lid
10	Rear seat entertainment
12	Rear spoiler (Sportback), sunroof

▶

4G8012721BD

Fuse panel Ⓒ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Infotainment system
2	Infotainment system
3	Infotainment, automatic dimming interior rearview mirror
4	Rearview camera/peripheral cameras
5	TV tuner
6	Tank leak detection system
7	Sockets
8	Parking heater
10	Lumbar support (front passenger's seat)
11	Emergency call
12	Infotainment system

Fuse panel Ⓓ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Air suspension, adaptive dampers, sport differential, electromechanical parking brake
2	Clutch pedal position sensor/automatic transmission
3	Seats
4	Rear wiper (Avant)
5	Side assist
6	Engine sound
7	Infotainment/sound amplifier
8	Gateway
9	Sport differential
10	Climate control system
11	Tire pressure monitoring system, parking heater
12	Start/Stop system

Fuse panel Ⓔ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Special purpose vehicles/rear seats

Fuse panel Ⓕ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Rear window defogger

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large **cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black**.

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). If the vehicle battery is frozen, you must thaw it before connecting the jump start cables. If you do not, this increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
- Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
- The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
- Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.
- Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 193*.

Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected.

▶

Tips

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit.

Use of jumper cables

Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!

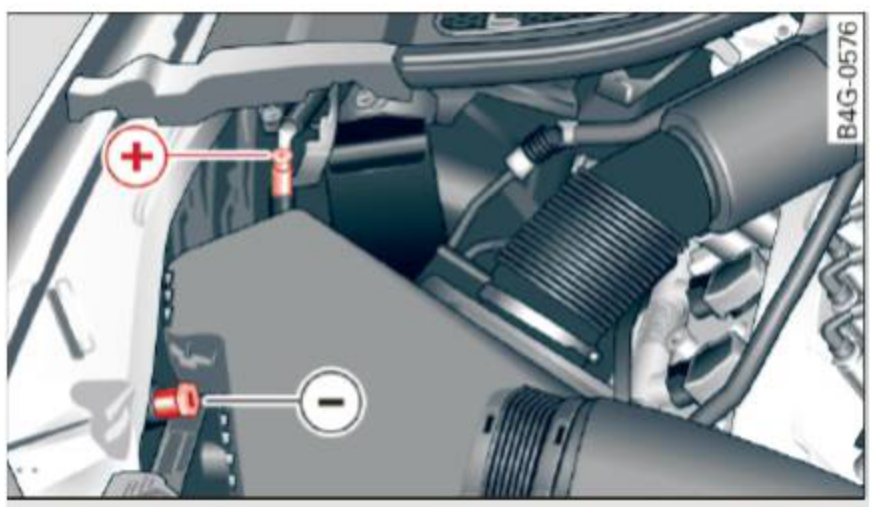


Fig. 211 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables and charger

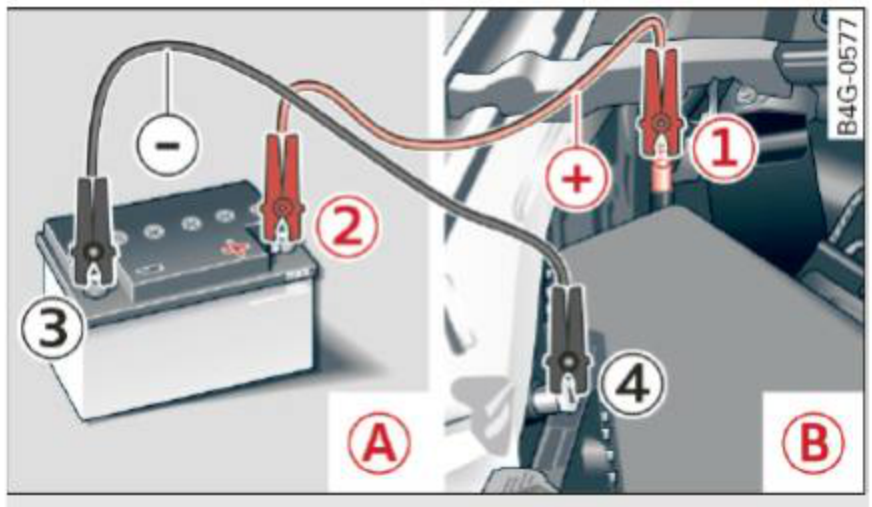


Fig. 212 Jump starting with the battery of another vehicle: Ⓐ – booster battery, Ⓑ – discharged vehicle battery

The procedure described below for connecting jumper cables is intended to provide a jump start for your vehicle.

Vehicle with discharged battery:

▸ Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to N (Neutral) or P (Park) and set parking brake.

Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 211*.

1. Connect one end of the red positive cable on the **jump start bolt** ⇨ *fig. 212* ① (bolt under the red cover = "positive") of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.
2. Connect the other end to the positive terminal ② of the booster battery Ⓐ.

Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect one end of the black negative cable to the negative terminal ③ of the booster battery Ⓐ.
4. Connect the other end to the **jump start pin** ④ (bolts with hex head bolt = "negative") of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.

Starting the engine

▸ Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery Ⓐ. Run the engine at a moderate speed.
▸ Start engine with discharged vehicle battery Ⓑ in the usual manner.
▸ If the engine fails to start, do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again.
▸ With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact *reverse* order.
▸ Close the red cover on the positive terminal.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their metal parts in full contact with the battery terminals.

WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

– Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.
– When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment. ▸

– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 193*.

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

– Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
– Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative **(–)** cable to the negative **(–)** terminal on the discharged battery ④ ⇨ *fig. 212*. Instead, securely connect the negative **(–)** cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode!

Towing with a tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

– **Never tow your Audi. Towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
– **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
– **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flatbed truck.**
– **To load the vehicle on to the flatbed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 249* and ⇨ *page 250*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop

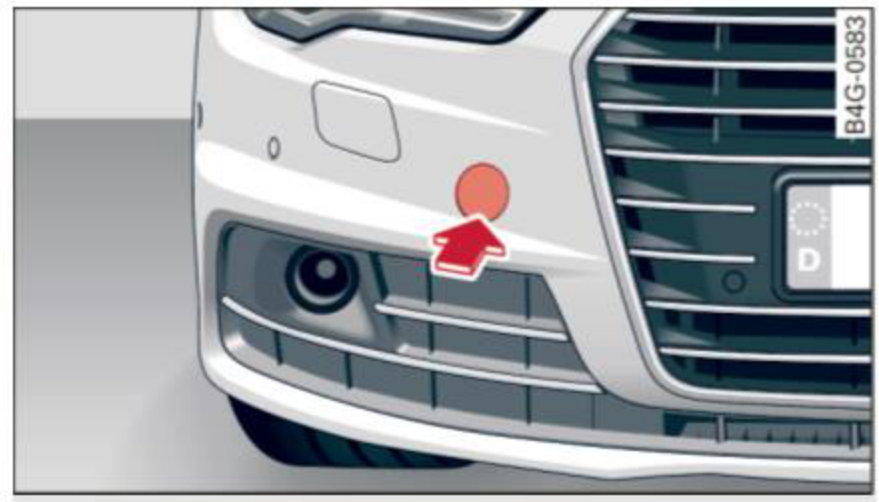


Fig. 213 Front bumper: cover

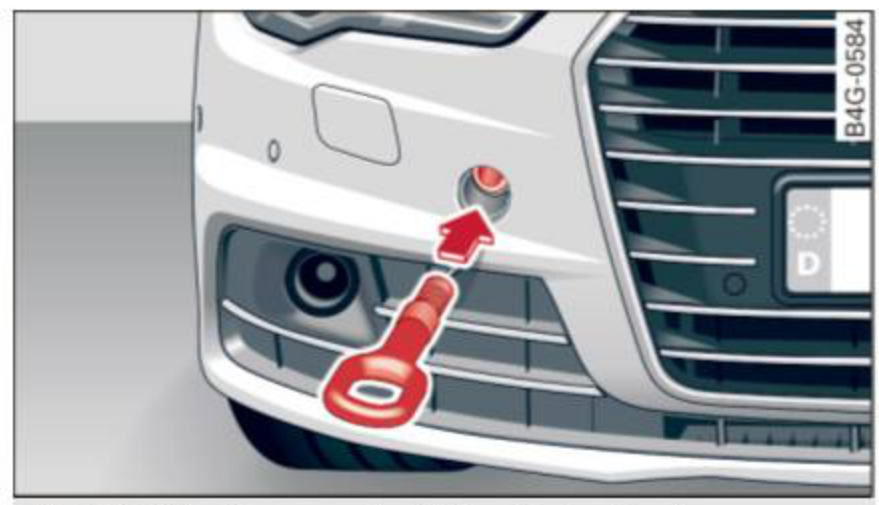


Fig. 214 Front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located behind a cover on the right side of the front bumper.

▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 233*.
▸ Press the cap inward with brief, forceful pressure ⇨ *fig. 213*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 214* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit. ▶

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Rear towing loop



Fig. 215 Rear bumper: cover



Fig. 216 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening is located in the bumper on the right rear side.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 233*.
- ▸ Press the cap inward with brief, forceful pressure ⇨ *fig. 215*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- ▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 216* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Loading the vehicle onto a flatbed truck



Fig. 217 Vehicle on flatbed truck

Front hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

Raising the vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.

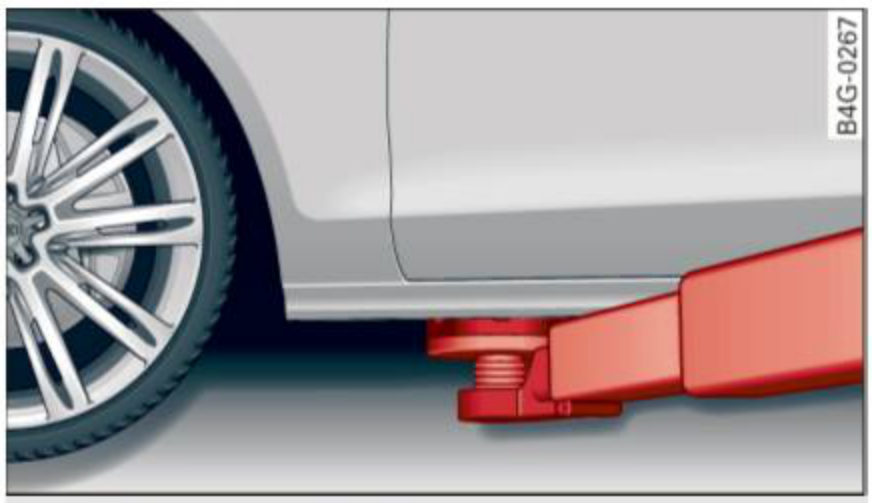


Fig. 218 Front lifting point

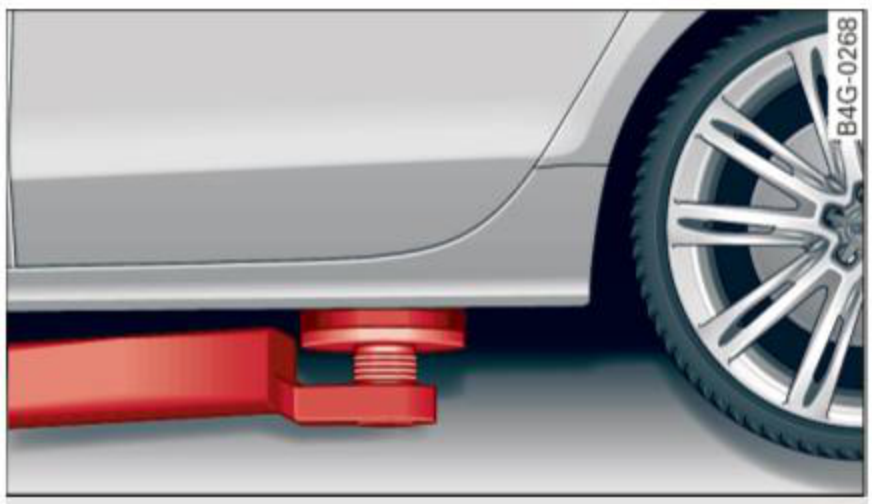


Fig. 219 Rear lifting point

- ▸ Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Activate the vehicle jack mode* in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **On**.
- ▸ Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 218* and ⇨ *fig. 219*.
- ▸ Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- ▸ Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

The vehicle jack mode* must be activated so that the automatic adjustment of the Adaptive Air Suspension* does not make it more difficult to raise the vehicle with the floor jack.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 218*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the on-board jack ⇨ *fig. 219*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 238*.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  - Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 218* and ⇨ *fig. 219*.
  - Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
- When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

! Note

- Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  - **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**

▸

– **Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**
– **Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.**

Vehicle transport

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

Note

When transporting the vehicle on a car carrier, train, ship or by other means, only tie the vehicle down at the running surface of the tires, which is the outer circumference. Securing the vehicle at the axle components, suspension struts or towing eyes is not permitted because the pressure in the air suspension struts can change during transport. The vehicle may not be secured sufficiently if this happens.

Technical data

Vehicle specifications

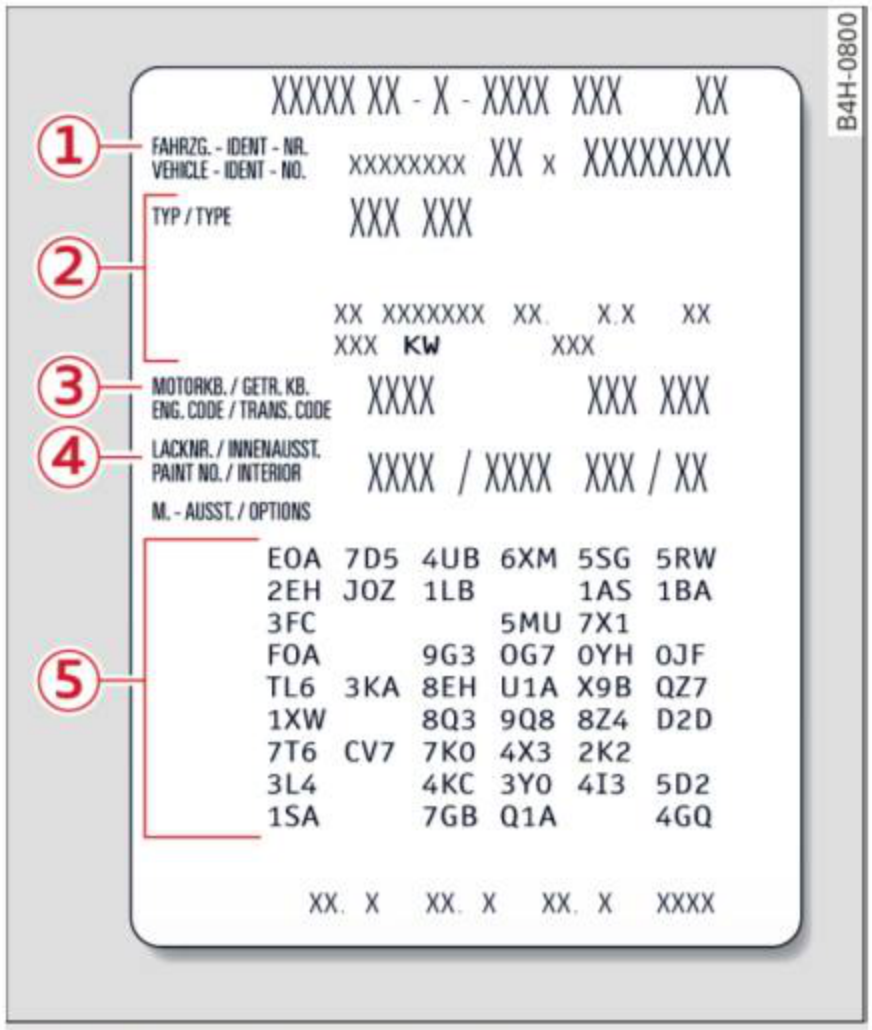


Fig. 220 Vehicle identification label

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The VIN number is located in the following places:

– In the Infotainment system: select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Service & control** > **VIN number**.
– on the vehicle identification label
– At the front under the windshield*

Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 220* is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

The vehicle identification label information can also be found in the Warranty and Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission codes
④ Paint and interior codes
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

Notes about technical data

The values may vary based on special equipment as well as market-specific equipment and measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

Tips

Missing technical data was not available at the time of printing.

Dimensions

	Length (in (mm))	Width (in (mm))	Width across the mirrors (in (mm))	Height at curb weight (in (mm))
A7 Sportback	196.2 (4,984)	75.2 (1,911)	84.2 (2,139)	55.9 (1,420)
RS 7 Sportback	197.3 (5,012)	75.2 (1,911)	84.2 (2,139)	55.9 (1,419)
S7 Sportback	196.3 (4,985)	75.2 (1,911)	84.2 (2,139)	55.0 (1,398)

4G8012721BD

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Gasoline engine fuel tank	19.8 gal (75.0 L)
Windshield washer system	3.7 qt (3.5 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	5.2 qt (4.9 L)

Weights

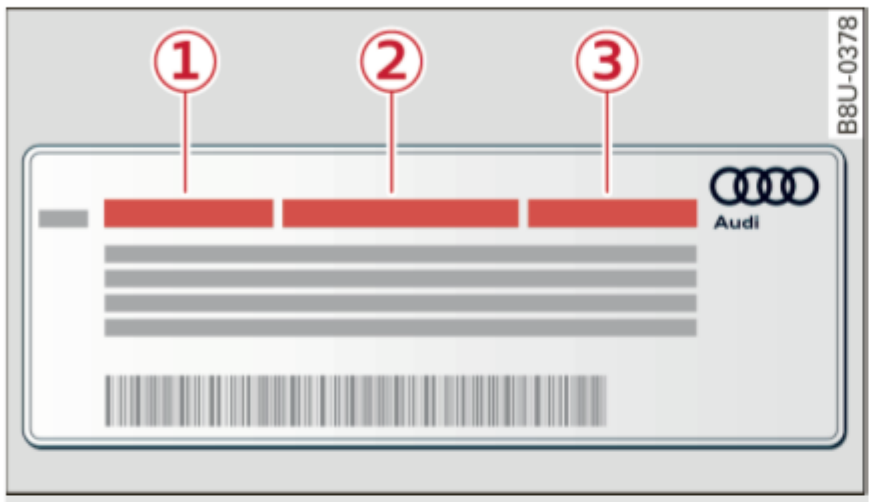


Fig. 221 Safety certificate

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum permitted total weight (1) of the vehicle is given on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's side door post.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The maximum permitted load on the front axle (2) or the rear axle (3) is given on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's side door post.

Load

The maximum permitted load is given on the tire pressure label on the driver's side door post.

Roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is 220 lbs (100 kg).

Consumer Information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

– *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
– *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
– *Emissions Control System Warranty*
– *Emissions Performance Warranty*
– *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
– *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

– unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
– fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
– service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
– replacement parts may not be readily available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.audi.techliterature.com

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

– oil changes, and
– cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the ▶

4G8012721BD

scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ **and** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 193*.

WARNING

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always switch off the ignition before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.
- Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in P (Park position) and the park brake is applied. ▶

For the sake of the environment

– Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
– Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
– Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Accessories and technical changes

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Audi vehicles that are constructed with advanced materials like Steel/Aluminum (Hybrid construction), Aluminum (Audi Space Frame), and/or Aluminum/Carbon Fiber (Ultra Advanced Light Weight Materials) are as unique as their drivers. Therefore, the availability of certain parts needed for repair, restoration, or reconstruction will be restricted, or parts will be unavailable, if the vehicle is not repaired at an authorized Audi collision repair facility. This includes but is not limited to structural parts which require specialized training and equipment to restore their crashworthiness back to the original NHTSA and IIHS performance.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.
– Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
– These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
– Do not use license plate brackets in the front area that are different from the one installed at the factory, or add additional license plate brackets.
– Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 193*.

Note

– If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle’s engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
– If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

4G8012721BD

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

⚠ WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems

The manufacturer is not liable for radio malfunctions that are caused by unauthorized changes to the equipment.

Equipment

The following equipment complies with FCC section 15 and RSS-Gen:

– Audi adaptive cruise control*
– Audi side assist*
– Remote control key
– Garage door opener (HomeLink)*
– Cell phone package*
– Tire pressure monitoring system*

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen

This device complies with Industry Canada's license-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference; and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

CNR-Gen

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes :

1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;

2) l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Numbers and Symbols

4-zone deluxe automatic climate control ... 58
Air vents ... 62
Key recognition ... 58
Operation ... 60
Residual heat ... 62
Synchronizing ... 62

A

A/C (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) ... 61
A/C (deluxe automatic climate control) ... 59
ABS
refer to Anti-lock braking system ... 120
Accessories ... 52, 257
Active lane assist ... 96
Adjusting the vibration warning ... 98
Cleaning the camera area ... 229
Indicator light ... 97
Messages ... 97
Switching on/off ... 97
Adaptive air suspension ... 105
Adaptive cruise control ... 87
Braking guard ... 92
Cleaning the sensor ... 229
Messages ... 94
Request for driver intervention ... 92
Stop-and-go traffic ... 90
Adaptive dampers ... 105
Indicator light ... 18
Adjusting air distribution (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) ... 61
Adjusting air distribution (deluxe automatic climate control) ... 59
Adjusting the temperature (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) ... 61
Adjusting the temperature (deluxe automatic climate control) ... 59
Advanced key
refer to Convenience key ... 68
Airbag ... 146
Airbag system ... 166
Advanced Airbag System ... 150
Advanced Airbag System components ... 153
Care ... 161
Children ... 172
Child restraints ... 172
Components (front airbags) ... 153
Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat ... 147
Disposal ... 161
Front airbags ... 150, 151
How do the front airbags work? ... 156
How many airbags does my vehicle have? 153
How the Advanced Airbag System components work together ... 155
Important information ... 146
Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system ... 164
Knee airbags ... 162
Monitoring ... 158
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light ... 158
Repairs ... 161
Safety instructions ... 160
Side airbags ... 164
Side curtain airbags ... 167
Warning/Indicator lights ... 158
When must the system be inspected? ... 158
Air pressure
Tires ... 215
Air pressure (tire pressure monitoring system) ... 224
Air suspension ... 105
Alarm system
refer to Anti-theft alarm system ... 32
Alignment pin (tire changing) ... 233
All-weather lights ... 39
All season tires ... 220
All wheel drive ... 124
Alternator
refer to Alternator (indicator light) ... 14
Alternator (indicator light) ... 14
Ambient lighting ... 42
Anti-freeze
Windshield washer system ... 203
Anti-lock braking system ... 120
Indicator light ... 16
Anti-Slip Regulation ... 120
Indicator light ... 16
Anti-theft alarm system ... 32
Ashtray ... 51

4G8012721BD

ASR
refer to Anti-Slip Regulation 120
Audi braking guard
refer to Braking guard 92
Audi drive select
refer to Drive select 105
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 255
AUTO
4-zone deluxe automatic climate control . . 61
Automatic headlights 39
Deluxe automatic climate control 59
Auto Lock (central locking) 26
Automatic belt retractor 141
Automatic climate control 58
Key recognition 58
Operation 59
Automatic key 27
Automatic post-collision braking system . . 120
Automatic transmission 74
Emergency mode 79
Hill descent control 77
Kick-down 78
Overboost 78
Selector lever emergency release 80
Selector lever positions 75
Shifting manually 78
Steering wheel with shift paddles 78
tiptronic mode 78
Automatic wipe/wash system 45
Auto Safety Hotline 136
Average consumption 21
Average speed 21

B

Battery
Jump starting 247
also refer to Vehicle battery 201
Before driving 129
Belt tensioner
Drive select 105
Belt tensioners 144
Blended gasoline 189
Blower (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Blower (deluxe automatic climate control) . . 59
Boost display 23
Booster seats 180
Boost pressure indicator 23
Brakes 122
Brake assist 120
Brake booster 122
Brake fluid 201
Ceramic brake rotors 122
Electromechanical parking brake 72
Emergency braking function 73
Indicator light 12, 18
New brake pads 122
Worn brake pads 16
Braking guard 92
Messages 94
Settings 94
Break-in security feature 32
Breaking in
New brake pads 122
New engine 64
New tires 212

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 194
Battery specific 201
Capacities
Fuel tank 254
Washer fluid reservoir 254
Care 228
Cargo area 134
Catalytic converter 192
Central locking 26
Convenience key 29
Mechanically locking 31
Power windows 36
Remote control key 29
Setting 31
Sunroof 36
Central locking switch 30
Ceramic brake rotors
New brake pads 122
Certification 258
Changing engine oil 198

Child restraints
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat . . . 147
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 188
Child restraint system anchors 184
Child safety 170
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats 174
Important things to know when driving with children 170
Tether anchors 187
Tether straps 187
Child safety lock
Power windows 35
Rear doors 35
Child safety seats 176
Booster seats 180
Convertible child seats 178
Convertible locking retractor 183
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? 174
Infant seats 176
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system 186
LATCH system 186
Lower anchorages 185
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 186
Safety instructions 174
Securing 181
Unused safety belts on the rear seat 176
Cigarette lighter 51
Cleaning 228
Cleaning/removing ice from windows 230
Cleaning Alcantara 231
Cleaning artificial leather 231
Cleaning carbon parts 230, 231
Cleaning controls 230
Cleaning decorative parts/trim 230
Cleaning displays 230
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 229
Cleaning plastic parts 230
Cleaning rims 229
Cleaning textiles 231
Climate control system 58
Automatic recirculation 62
Basic settings 62
Drive select 105
Closing
Hood 195
Sunroof 36
Windows 35
Closing/opening
By remote control 29
Using the door lock cylinder 31
With the convenience key 29
Closing aid (doors) 26
Cockpit (overview) 6
Coming home 41
Compartments 52
Compliance 258
Consumer Information 136, 255
Consumption (fuel) 21
Contacting NHTSA 136
Convenience key
Starting the engine (START ENGINE STOP button) 68
Stopping the engine (START ENGINE STOP button) 68
Switching the ignition on 68
Unlocking/locking 29
Convenience opening 36
Convertible child safety seats 178
Convertible locking retractor
Activating 183
Deactivating 184
Using to secure a child safety seat 183
Cooling down 64
Cooling mode (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Cooling mode (deluxe automatic climate control) 59
Cooling system
Adding coolant 200
Coolant 199
Coolant level checking 200
Coolant temperature indicator 9
Indicator light 14
Cornering light 105
Crossing water 64

Cruise control system
Changing speed 85
Preselecting speed 85
Switching off 85
switching on 84
Cup holders 52
Current consumption 21
Cylinder management
refer to Cylinder on demand system 21
Cylinder on demand system 21

D

Data recorder 127
Date display 23
Daytime running lights 39
Declaration of compliance 258
Defective light bulb warning
Indicator light 18
Defrosting (windows)
4-zone deluxe automatic climate control . . 61
Deluxe automatic climate control 59
DEF (instrument cluster) 23
Deluxe automatic climate control
Air vents 60
Determining correct load limit 219
Dimensions 253
Dimming the rearview mirror 43
Distance driven 21
Door/rear lid warning 20
Doors
Child safety lock 35
Closing aid 26
Mechanically locking 31
Driver information system 20
Boost 23
CD/radio display 20
Door/rear lid warning 20
Efficiency program 22
Engine oil temperature display 23
Exterior temperature display 20
On-board computer 21
Service interval display 203
Shifting indicator 23
Driver seating position 130
Drive select 105
Driving economically 65
Driving safely 129
Driving through water 64
Driving time 21
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 58
Dynamic steering 105
Indicator light 124

E

Easy seat entry 67
Economy tips (efficiency program) 22
EDL
refer to Electronic Differential Lock 120
Efficiency program 22
Electromechanical parking brake 72
Electromechanical steering 124
Indicator light 124
Electronic Differential Lock 120
Indicator light 16
Electronic immobilizer 27
Electronic stabilization control 120
Indicator light 16
Sport mode 121
Emergency assistance 233
Emergency braking function 73
Emergency flashers 41
Emergency operation
Doors 31
Luggage compartment lid 34
Selector lever 80
Sunroof 37
Emergency release
Fuel filler door 192
Emergency starting 247
Emissions control system 192
Energy management 126
Indicator light 14
Engine
Coolant 199
Start/Stop system 70
Starting 68
Starting with jumper cables 247
Stopping 68
Warming up/cooling down 64

Engine compartment
Opening/closing the hood 195
Overview 196
Safety precautions 193
Engine control (indicator light) 17
Engine oil
Adding 196
Changing 198
Checking oil level 196
Consumption 196
Indicator light 15
Temperature indicator 23
Engine sound 105
Engine speed limitation (indicator light) . . . 17
Engine Start/Stop mode
refer to Start/Stop system 72
Engine warm-up request
Indicator light 17
Environment
Proper disposal of drained engine oil 198
Unleaded gasoline 189
EPC (engine control) 17
ESC
Automatic post-collision braking system . 120
also refer to Electronic stabilization control 120
ESP
refer to Electronic stabilization control . . 120
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 127
Exterior lighting 39
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 43
Dimming 43
Heating 43
Exterior temperature display 20

F

Fastening
Booster seats 180
Convertible child safety seats 178
Infant seats 176
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) 258
Floor mats 134
Folding the rear seats 54
Foot pedals 134
For the sake of the environment
Environmentally-friendly driving 65
Fueling 190
Leaks 194
Roof rack 54
Warming up the engine 68
Freeze protection
Coolant 199
Front airbags
Description 150
How they work 156
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics . . 139
Front center armrest 48
Front seats
Adjusting 131
Child restraints in the front seat 147
also refer to Seats 47
Fuel 189
Additives 189
Blended gasoline 189
Current consumption 21
Fuel gauge 9, 10
Fuel tank capacity 254
Gasoline 189
Gasoline additives 190
Indicator light 17
Saving fuel 65, 105
Fueling
Fuel gauge 10
Fuel tank capacity 254
Opening the fuel filler door 190
Fuses
Assignment 244
Replacing 243

G

Garage door opener (HomeLink) 37
Garment hook 53
Gasoline 189
Octane rating 189
Recommendation 189
GAWR
refer to Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) 254
Glasses holder 53
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 208
Glove compartment 53
cooled 53

4G8012721BD

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) 254
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 254
GVWR
refer to Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 254

H

Head-up display 24
Headlight range control system 39
Indicator light 18
Headlights 40
Cleaning 229
Headlight range control system 39
Washer system 45
Head restraints 132
Adjusting 48, 49, 132
Removing and installing 49
Heated
Exterior mirrors 43
Rear window (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 62
Rear window (deluxe automatic climate control) 60
Seats (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Seats (deluxe automatic climate control) . . 60
Washer nozzles 45
Heating 58
Heavy clothing and safety belts 140
High beams
Assistant 40
Hill descent control 77
Hill hold assist 74
also refer to Hill hold assist 74
HomeLink (garage door opener) 37
Hooks 56
Horn 6
How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety 184
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 153
How safety belt pretensioners work 144

I

Ignition
Indicator light 15
Switching on/off 68
Imbalance (wheels) 214
Immobilizer 23, 27
Important things to do before driving 129
Improperly worn safety belts 144
Indicator lights 10
Infant seats 176
Inspection interval 203
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts 181
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 187
Instrument cluster 9
Indicator lights 10
Messages 10
Instruments 9
Adjusting illumination 42
Interior lighting
Ambient lighting 42
Front and rear 42
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 45

J

Jump-starting 247
Jumper cables 248

K

Key 27
Indicator light 69
Key not recognized 70
Key replacement 27
Mechanical key 27, 28
Replacing the battery 28
Unlocking/locking 29, 31
Key recognition (climate control system) . . . 58
Kick-down (automatic transmission) 78
Knee airbags 162
Description 162
How they work 163
Important safety instructions 164

L

Lane assist
refer to Active lane assist 96

Lap timer 85
Evaluating times 86
Starting 86
Stopping timing 86
also refer to Lap timer 86
LATCH 184
Description 185
Installing a child restraint 186
Location 185
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 186
Launch control program 79
Leather care/cleaning 231
Leaving home 41
Lifting jack 238
Light
Ambient lighting 42
Coming/Leaving home 41
Daytime running lights 39
Headlight flasher 40
Headlights 40
High beam assistant 40
Low beams 39
Parking lights 39
Rear fog lights 39
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 39
Indicator light 18
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 45
Lighting
Exterior 39
Interior 42
Lights
Headlight range control system 39
Interior/reading lights 42
Load 254
Locking/unlocking
By remote control 29
Using the door lock cylinder 31
With the convenience key 29
Low beams 39
Indicator light 18
Lower universal anchorages (Canada) 184
Luggage compartment 54
12 Volt socket 52
Cover 56
Increasing the size 54
Luggage compartment net 55
Pass-through 57
Ski bag 57
Storing cargo correctly 134
Stowing luggage 134
Tie-downs 55
Luggage compartment lid
Closing button 32
Emergency release 34
Movement-activated opening 34
Opening/closing 32
Lumbar support 47

M

Maintenance 255
Maintenance intervals 203
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 193
Massage function 47
Mechanical key 27, 28
Mechanically locking the front passenger door 31
Memory function 49
Mirrors
Dimming 43
Exterior mirrors 43
Vanity mirror 44
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 158
Multifunction steering wheel 21

N

Natural leather care/cleaning 231
NHTSA
Contacting 136
Night vision assist 102
Cleaning the camera 229
Number of seats 138

O

Occupant seating positions 130
Octane rating (gasoline) 189
Odometer 23
OFF (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
OFF (deluxe automatic climate control) 59

4G8012721BD

Oil
Indicator light 17
also refer to Engine oil 196
Oil change interval 203
On-board computer 21
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 193
Opening 26
Fuel filler door 190
Hood 195
Luggage compartment lid 32
Sunroof 36
Windows 35
Opening/closing
Using the door lock cylinder 31
With the convenience key 29
also refer to Unlocking/locking 26
Other consumers (efficiency program) 22
Overboost (automatic transmission) 78
Overview (Cockpit) 6

P

Paint damage 230
Paint number 253
Parking aid
Cleaning sensors/camera 229
Parking brake
refer to Electromechanical parking brake . 72
Parking lights 39
Parking system
refer to Parking systems 109, 110
Parking systems 108
Adjusting the display/warning tone 118
Cleaning the rearview camera 110
Malfunction 118
Parking system plus 109
Peripheral cameras 113
Peripheral display 109
Rearview camera 110
Trailer hitch 118
Parking (automatic transmission) 76
Parts replacement 257
Pass-through 57
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 158
Passenger protection 95
Pedals 134
Pedestrian detection 102
Peripheral display 109
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . 139
Polishing 230
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 58
Pollutant filter 58
Power
Seat adjustment 47
Windows 35
Power windows
Child safety lock 35
Convenience opening 36
Malfunction 36
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 143
Pre sense 95
Pressure
Tire pressure monitoring system 223
Pretensioners
Pre sense 95
Preventative passenger protection 95
Proper occupant seating positions 130
Proper safety belt position 142
Proper seating position
Front passenger 131
Occupants 130
Rear passengers 132
Protecting 230

Q

quattro (all wheel drive) 124
Selective wheel torque control 120
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . 139

R

Radio Standards Specification (RSS) 258
Rail carrier 252
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 39
Indicator light 18
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 45
Raising the vehicle 251
Range (fuel level) 21

Reading lights 42
Rear fog lights 39
Rear light
Indicator light 18
Rear shelf 56
Rear spoiler 125
Rearview camera
refer to Parking systems 109, 110
Rearview mirror dimming 43
Rear window defogger (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 62
Rear window defogger (deluxe automatic climate control) 60
Recirculation mode (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Recirculation mode (deluxe automatic climate control) 59
Recuperation 21
Refueling 190
Fuel filler door emergency release 192
Remote control
refer to Remote control key 27
Remote control key 27
LED 28
Personalizing 27
Replacing the battery 28
Unlocking/locking 29
Remote control operation
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 37
Removing the side trim panel in the luggage compartment 192
Repair manuals 255
Repairs
Airbag system 161
Replacement key 27
Replacing windshield wiper blades 46
Reporting Safety Defects 136, 137
Reset button (trip odometer) 23
Resetting the trip odometer 23
Residual heat (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 62
Retractor 141
Reverse gear (automatic transmission) 75
Rims 220
Road carrier 252
Roof load 54, 254
Roof rack 54
also refer to Roof rack 54

S

Safe driving habits 129
Safety 129
Airbag system 146
Belts 138
Cargo 134
Correct seating position 130
Pedal area 134
Safety belt position 142
Safety belt height adjustment 143
Safety belts worn by pregnant women . . . 143
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal 145
Safety belts 138, 141
Cleaning 230
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt 139
Fastening 141
Height adjustment 143
Improperly worn 144
Indicator light (front) 14
Not worn 139
Safety belt position 142
Safety instructions 140
Securing child safety seats 181
Special considerations for pregnant women 143
Unfastening 143
Warning/indicator light 138
Worn properly 140
Safety belt warning light 138
Safety instructions
for side curtain airbags 169
for using child safety seats 174
for using safety belts 140
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 160
Saving fuel
Cylinder on demand system 21
Efficiency program 22
Recuperation 21
Screwdriver 233
Seat adjustment
Head restraints 132

4G8012721BD

Seat heating (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Seat heating (deluxe automatic climate control) 60
Seating position
Driver 130
Front passenger 131
How to adjust the front seats 131
Incorrect seat position 133
Occupants 130
Rear passengers 132
Seats
Adjusting 47
Cleaning 231
Convenience side view 50
Correct seating position 130
Folding 54
Massage function 47
Seat symmetry 50
Seats (number) 138
Seat ventilation (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Selective wheel torque control 120
Selector lever (automatic transmission)
Emergency release 80
Positions 75
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 145
Service interval display 203
Shifting indicator 23
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) 78
Ship carrier 252
Side airbags
Description 164
How they work 166
Side assist 99
Adjusting the brightness 101
Cleaning the sensors 229
Sensor range 100
Switching on and off 101
also refer to Side assist 99
Side curtain airbags 167
Description 167
How they work 168
Safety instructions 169
Ski bag 57
Securing 57
Snow chains 221
Socket 52
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 188
Space-saving spare tire 241
Spare tire 241
Speedometer 9
Speed warning system 84
Spoiler 125
Sport differential 105
Indicator light 18
Star button 21
Start/Stop system 70
Engine does not switch off 71
Engine starts automatically 71
Indicator lights 70
Messages 72
Starting/stopping the engine 70
Switching off/on 72
START ENGINE STOP button 68
Starting to drive 74
Starting (engine) 68, 70
Steering
Electromechanical steering 124
Indicator light 15, 124
Locking 68
also refer to Electromechanical steering . 124
Steering wheel
Buttons 21
Easy seat entry 67
Manual adjustment 66
Power adjustment 67
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) . . . 78
Steering wheel heating 63
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 219
Stopping (engine) 68, 70
Storage 56
Storage compartments 52
Storage hooks 56
S tronic (automatic transmission) 74
Launch control program 79
Sunroof 36
Convenience opening 36
Emergency closing 37
Sunshade 44
Sun visors 44

Symbols
refer to Indicator lights 10

T

Tachometer 9, 10, 20
Tail lights
Cleaning 229
Technical data 253
Technical modifications 258
Temperature display
Exterior temperature 20
Temperature indicator
Coolant 9
Engine oil 23
Tether anchors 187
Tether strap 187
Tie-downs 55, 136
Time 23
tiptronic mode (automatic transmission) . . . 78
tiptronic (automatic transmission) 74
Tire Mobility System (tire repair set) 234
Tires 205
All wheel drive 124
Low-profile tires 221
Repair set 234
Replacing 236
Service life 214
Tire pressure 215
Tire pressure monitoring system 222, 223, 224
Tire pressure table 217
Tire pressure (trailer towing) 81
Treadwear indicators 214
Unidirectional 207
Uniform tire quality grading 221
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 208
Tires and vehicle load limits 218
Tool kit 233
Torn or frayed safety belts 140
Towing
Tow trucks 249
Towing loop 249, 250
TPMS
Indicator light 227
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 223, 224
Trailer towing 81
Parking systems 118
Trailer load 81
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) . . 79
Transport Canada 137
Turn signals 40

U

Unfastening safety belts 143
Uniform tire quality grading 221
Unlocking/locking
By remote control 29
Using the door lock cylinder 31
With the central locking switch 30
With the convenience key 29

V

Vanity mirror 44
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 228
Dimensions 253
Out of service 232
Specifications 253
Transporting 252
Vehicle battery 201
Charge level 126
Charging 14, 202
Energy management 126
Indicator light 14
Winter operation 202
Vehicle control modules 127
Vehicle jack 233, 238
Vehicle tool kit 233
Ventilation 58
VIN 253

W

Warming up 64
Warning/Indicator lights
Airbag system 158
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 158
Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 10

4G8012721BD

Warning triangle 233
Warranty coverages 255
Washer fluid level (indicator light) 17
Washing matte finish paint 228
Weights 254
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 142
What happens to unbelted occupants? 139
What impairs driving safety? 129
Wheel bolts 220
Wheels 205
  Cleaning 229
  Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 208
  Replacing 236
  Tire pressure monitoring system . . . 223, 224
  Tires and vehicle load limits 218
Wheel wrench 233
When must a safety belt be replaced? 140
When must the airbag system be inspected? 158
Where are lower anchorages located? 185
Wild animal detection 102
Window regulators 35
Windows
  Cleaning/removing ice 230
  Defrosting (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
  Defrosting (deluxe automatic climate control) 59
Windshield
  Cleaning 45
  Defrosting (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
  Defrosting (deluxe automatic climate control) 59
  also refer to Windshield 45
Windshield washer system 45, 203
  Reservoir capacity 254
Windshield wipers
  Cleaning wiper blades 46
  Folding up 46
  Indicator light 17
  Replacing windshield wiper blades 46
  Switching on and off 45
Winter operation
  Car washes 228
  Cooling system 199
  Defrosting windows (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
  Defrosting windows (deluxe automatic climate control) 59
  Removing ice from windows 230
  Seat heating (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 61
  Seat heating (deluxe automatic climate control) 60
  Snow chains 221
  Steering wheel heating 63
  Tires 220
  Vehicle battery 202
  Windshield washer system 203
Winter tires 220

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This Owner's Manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 05.2017
4G8012721BD

4G8012721BD

www.audi.com